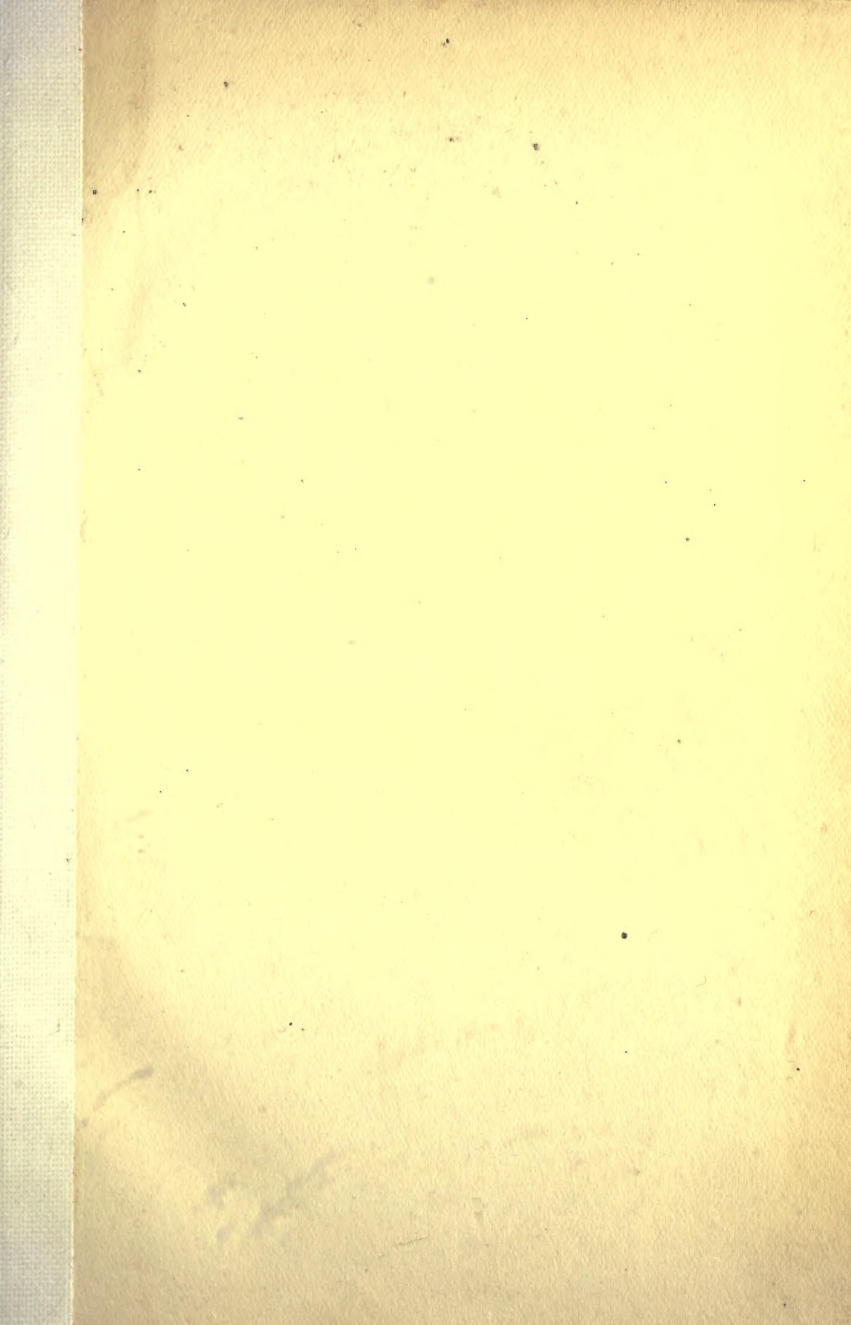


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 01003643 2





Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation



9.47.
2813 m. 3

7 Jahre

I

A

MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN PRIMER

WITH

GRAMMAR, NOTES, AND GLOSSARY

BY

JOSEPH WRIGHT

M.A., PH.D., D.C.L., LL.D., LITT.D.

FELLOW OF THE BRITISH ACADEMY
CORPUS CHRISTI PROFESSOR OF COMPARATIVE PHILOLOGY
IN THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD

THIRD EDITION
RE-WRITTEN AND ENLARGED

224132
30.7.28

OXFORD
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

1917

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

LONDON EDINBURGH GLASGOW NEW YORK

TORONTO MELBOURNE BOMBAY

HUMPHREY MILFORD

PUBLISHER TO THE UNIVERSITY

PF

4069

W9

1917

cop. 2

EXTRACTS FROM THE PREFACES TO THE FIRST AND SECOND EDITIONS

THE present book has been written in the hope that it will serve as an elementary introduction to the larger German works on the subject from which I have appropriated whatever seemed necessary for the purpose. In the grammar much aid has been derived from Paul's *Mittelhochdeutsche Grammatik*, second edition, Halle, 1884, and Weinhold's *Mittelhochdeutsche Grammatik*, second edition, Paderborn, 1883. The former work, besides containing by far the most complete syntax, is also the only Middle High German Grammar which is based on the present state of German Philology. . . . I believe that the day is not far distant when English students will take a much more lively interest in the study of their own and the other Germanic languages (especially German and Old Norse) than has hitherto been the case. And if this little book should contribute anything towards furthering the cause, it will have amply fulfilled its purpose.

LONDON: *January*, 1888.

WHEN I wrote the preface to the first edition of this primer in 1888, I ventured to predict that the interest of English students in the subject would grow and develop as time went on, but I hardly expected that it would grow so much that a second edition of the book would be required within

so short a period. It has been revised throughout, and several changes have been made in the phonology, but I have not thought it advisable to alter the general plan and scope of the former edition. After many years of personal experience as a teacher and examiner in the older periods of the German language, I have become firmly convinced that the larger books on the subject contain too many details for beginners. I feel sure that the easiest and best way to acquire a thorough knowledge of Middle High German is to start with an elementary book like the present, and then to learn the details of the grammar, especially the phonology of the various dialects, from a more advanced work.

OXFORD: *December, 1898.*

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION

IN the preparation of the new edition, I have steadily kept in view the class of students for whom the book was originally written. When the first edition appeared twenty-eight years ago, there were very few students in this country who took up the serious study of the older periods of the various Germanic languages at the Universities. In late years, however, the interest in the study of these languages has grown so much that Honour Courses and Examinations in them have been established at all our Universities. The result is that a book even intended for beginners can now reasonably be expected to be of a higher standard than the previous editions of this Primer. The grammatical introduction has accordingly been entirely rewritten and expanded to more than twice its original size. The texts have also been nearly doubled by the addition of eighteen poems from Walther von der Vogelweide, and selections from Reinmar, Ulrich von Lichtenstein, and Wolfram von Eschenbach.

The greater part of Middle High German literature is so excellent and interesting that most students, who have mastered the grammatical introduction and read the texts in the Primer, will doubtless desire to continue the subject. Such students should procure a copy of either the *Mittelhochdeutsche Grammatik* by Hermann Paul, eighth edition, Halle, 1911, or the *Mittelhochdeutsches Elementarbuch* by Victor Michels, second edition, Heidelberg, 1912, where the

Grammar, especially the phonology and syntax, can be studied in greater detail. They should also procure a copy of the *Mittelhochdeutsches Taschenwörterbuch* by Matthias Lexer, tenth edition, Leipzig, 1910, and also have access to the two standard Middle High German dictionaries—*Mittelhochdeutsches Wörterbuch mit Benutzung des Nachlasses von Georg Friedrich Benecke*, ausgearbeitet von Wilhelm Müller und Friedrich Zarncke, drei Bände, Leipzig, 1854–61, and *Mittelhochdeutsches Wörterbuch*, von Matthias Lexer, zugleich als Supplement und alphabetischer Index zum *Mittelhochdeutschen Wörterbuch* von Benecke-Müller-Zarncke, drei Bände, Leipzig, 1872–78. An excellent bibliography of the best editions of the Middle High German texts—classified according to the dialects in which they were written—will be found on pp. 20–35 of Michels' *Elementarbuch*.

May the new edition of the Primer continue to further the study of the subject in the future to the same extent as it has done in the past!

JOSEPH WRIGHT.

OXFORD,

October, 1916.

CONTENTS

PAGES

INTRODUCTION	I
The classification of the MHG. dialects (§ 1).	

CHAPTER I

THE VOWELS.	2-22
---------------------	------

The MHG. alphabet (§ 2). Pronunciation of the MHG. vowels (§ 3). Phonetic survey of the MHG. vowel-system (§ 4). The OHG. equivalents of the MHG. vowels (§ 5). The characteristic differences between OHG. and MHG. (§ 6). The weakening of unaccented vowels (§§ 7-8). The loss of unaccented vowels (§ 9). Umlaut (§ 10). The MHG. equivalents of the OHG. vowels (§ 11). Ablaut (§ 12). Other vowel changes (§§ 13-18).

CHAPTER II

THE CONSONANTS	22-35
--------------------------	-------

Pronunciation of the consonants (§§ 19-20). Phonetic survey of the MHG. consonants (§ 21). Characteristic differences between High German and the other West Germanic languages (§ 22). The High German sound-shifting (§§ 23-7). The interchange between **pf, b** and **f**; **k, g** and **h**; **zz, z** and **ss, s** (§ 28). The loss of the guttural nasal **ŋ** (§ 29). Verner's Law (§ 30). The doubling of consonants (§ 31). The simplification of double consonants (§ 32). The interchange between the lenes and the fortes (§ 33). Interchange between medial **h** and final **ch** (§ 34). Initial and medial **j** (§ 35). Medial and final **w** (§ 36). The loss of intervocalic **b, d, g** (§ 37). The loss of intervocalic **h** (§ 38). The loss of final **r** (§ 39). The change of medial **t** to **d** after nasals and **l** (§ 40).

CHAPTER III

	PAGES
DECLENSION OF NOUNS	36-46
Introductory remarks (§ 41).	
A. The vocalic or strong declension:—Masculine nouns (§§ 42-5); Neuter nouns (§§ 46-7); Feminine nouns (§§ 48-9).	
B. The weak declension (§§ 50-3).	
C. Declension of proper names (§ 54).	

CHAPTER IV

ADJECTIVES	46-52
A. The declension of adjectives (§§ 55-6).	
B. The comparison of adjectives (§§ 57-9).	
C. The formation of adverbs from adjectives (§§ 60-1).	
D. Numerals (§§ 62-4).	

CHAPTER V

PRONOUNS	53-57
Personal (§ 65). Reflexive (§ 66). Possessive (§ 67).	
Demonstrative (§ 68). Relative (§ 69). Interrogative (§ 70). Indefinite (§ 71).	

CHAPTER VI

VERBS	57-75
Classification of MHG. verbs (§ 72).	
A. Strong verbs:—The conjugation of the model strong verb <i>nēmen</i> (§§ 73-4). Class I (§§ 76-7). Class II (§§ 78-80). Class III (§ 81). Class IV (§ 82). Class V (§§ 83-4). Class VI (§§ 85-6). Class VII (§ 87).	
B. Weak Verbs:—Classification of MHG. weak verbs (§§ 88-9). Class I (§ 90). Class II (§ 92).	
C. Minor groups:—Preterite-presents (§ 93). Anomalous verbs (§§ 94-8). Contracted verbs (§ 99).	

CHAPTER VII

PAGES

SYNTAX 75-78

Cases (§§ 100-2). Adjectives (§ 103). Pronouns
(§ 104). Verbs (§§ 105-7). Negation (§ 108).

TEXTS:—

I. Berthold von Regensburg 79-83

II. The Swabian Lantrehtbuoch 83-85

III. Hartman von Ouwe 86-116

IV. Walther von der Vogelweide 116-133

V. Reinmar 133-139

VI. Ulrich von Lichtenstein 140-148

VII. Das Nibelungen-Lied 149-158

VIII. Wolfram von Eschenbach 158-168

NOTES 169-171

GLOSSARY 172-213

ABBREVIATIONS, ETC.

Goth.	= Gothic	OHG.	= Old High German
Gr.	= Greek	OS.	= Old Saxon
HG.	= High German	P. Germ.	= Primitive Germanic
Lat.	= Latin	UF.	= Upper Franco-nian
MHG.	= Middle High German	UG.	= Upper German
NHG.	= New High German		
OE.	= Old English		

The asterisk * prefixed to a word denotes a theoretical form, as MHG. **wärmen** from ***warmjan**, to warm.

In representing prehistoric forms the following signs are used :— **þ** (= **th** in Engl. **thin**), **ð** (= **th** in Engl. **then**), **ʋ** (= a bilabial spirant, which may be pronounced like the **v** in Engl. **vine**), **ʒ** (= **g** often heard in German **sagen**), **χ** (= NHG. **ch** and the **ch** in Scotch **loch**), **ŋ** (= **n** in Engl. **sunk**).

GRAMMAR

INTRODUCTION

§ 1. MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN

MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN (MHG.) embraces the High German language from about the year 1100 to 1500. It is divided into three great dialect-groups: Upper German, Franconian, and East Middle German.

1. Upper German is divided into: (a) Alemanic, embracing High Alemanic (Switzerland), and Low Alemanic (South Baden, Swabia, and Alsace). (b) Bavarian, extending over Bavaria and those parts of Austria where German is spoken.

2. Franconian (West Middle German), which is subdivided into Upper Franconian and Middle Franconian. Upper Franconian consists of East Franconian (the old duchy of *Francia Orientalis*) and Rhenish Franconian (the old province of *Francia Rhinensis*), Middle Franconian extending over the district along the banks of the Moselle and of the Rhine from Coblenz to Düsseldorf.

3. East Middle German, extending over: Thuringia, Upper Saxony, and Silesia.

Since it is impossible to deal with all these dialects in an elementary book like the present, we shall confine ourselves almost exclusively to Upper German, and shall only deal with that period of Middle High German which extends from about 1200 to 1300.

PHONOLOGY

CHAPTER I

THE VOWELS

§ 2. MHG. had the following simple vowels and diphthongs :—

Short vowels **a, ä, ë, e, i, o, u, ö, ü.**

Long „ **ā, æ, ē, ī, ō, ū, œ, iu.**

Diphthongs **ei, ie, ou, uo, öu (eu), üe.**

NOTE.—**ë** represents primitive Germanic **e** (= Gr. **ε**, Lat. **e**, as in Gr. *δέκα*, Lat. *decem*, MHG. *zëhen*, *ten*) and is generally written **ë** in Old and Middle High German grammars, in order to distinguish it from the OHG. umlaut-**e** (§ 10). The former was an open sound like the **e** in English *bed*, whereas the latter was a close sound like the **é** in French *été*. **ä** was a very open sound nearly like the **a** in English *hat*, and arose in MHG. from the **i**-umlaut of **a** (§ 10). Good MHG. poets do not rhyme Germanic **ë** with the umlaut-**e**, and the distinction between the two sounds is still preserved in many NHG. dialects. In like manner the modern Bavarian and Austrian dialects still distinguish between **ā** and **ē**. In the MHG. period **ā, ē**, and **e** were kept apart in Bavarian, but in Alemanic and Middle German **ā** and **ē** seem to have fallen together in **ē** or possibly **ā**, as the two sounds frequently rhyme with each other in good poets. MHG. texts do not always preserve in writing the distinction between the old umlaut-**e** and the MHG. umlaut-**ä**, both being often written **e** in the same text.

PRONUNCIATION OF THE VOWELS.

§ 3. The approximate pronunciation of the above vowels and diphthongs was as follows :—

a	as in NHG. mann	man, man.
ā	„ „ Engl. father	hāt, has.
ä	„ „ „ man	mäh̄te, powers.
æ	„ „ „ air	lære, empty.
ë	„ „ „ men	helfen, to help.
e	„ „ Fr. été	geste, guests.
ē	„ „ NHG. reh	sē, sea.
i	„ „ Engl. bit	biten, to beg.
ī	„ „ „ ween	wīn, wine.
o	„ „ „ pot	golt, gold.
ō	„ „ NHG. tōt	tōt, dead.
u	„ „ Engl. put	guldīn, golden.
ū	„ „ „ fool	hūs, house.
ö	„ „ NHG. löcher	löcher, holes.
œ	„ „ „ schön	schœne, beautiful.
ü	„ „ „ füllen	vüllen, to fill.
iu	„ „ „ müde	hiuser, houses.
	ei = e + i	stein, stone.
	ie = i + e	knie, knee.
	ou = o + u	ouge, eye.
	öu (eu) = ö or e + ü	dröuwen, to threaten.
	üe = ü + e	grüezen, to greet.
	uo = u + o	bruoder, brother.

To the above list should be added the MHG. *e* in unaccented syllables, which mostly arose from the weakening of the OHG. full vowels, as OHG. *zunga*, *tongue*, *hirti*, *shepherd*, *namo*, *name*, *fridu*, *peace* = MHG. *zunge*, *hirte*, *name*, *fride*; OHG. *habēn*, *to have*, *scōnī*, *beauty*, *salbōn*, *to anoint*, *zungūn*, *tongues* = MHG. *haben*, *schœne*, *salben*, *zungen*. The *e* in this position was pronounced like the *-e* in NHG. *zunge*, *name*, *friede*, &c.

PHONETIC SURVEY OF THE MHG. VOWEL-SYSTEM.

- § 4. Palatal { Short ä, ë, e, i, ö, ü.
 { Long æ, ē, ī, œ, iu (= ū).
 { Short a, o, u.
 { Long ā, ō, ū.

THE OHG. EQUIVALENTS OF THE MHG. VOWELS.

§ 5. The following are the OHG. equivalents of the MHG. short vowels, long vowels and diphthongs of accented syllables:—

1. The short vowels a, ë, e, i, o, u = the corresponding OHG. short vowels, as *tac, day, gast, guest, bant, he bound, gap, he gave* = OHG. *tag, gast, bant, gab.*

wēc, way, nēmen, to take, zēhen, ten = OHG. *wēg, nēman, zēhan.*

geste, guests, leंबर, lambs, vert, he goes = OHG. *gesti, lembir, ferit.*

wizzen, to know, hilfe, I help, visch, fish = OHG. *wizzan, hilfu, fisk.*

got, God, wol, well, geholfen, helped = OHG. *got, wola, giholfan.*

sun, son, wurm, worm, gebunden, bound = OHG. *sunu, wurm, gibuntan.*

ä is the umlaut of a before certain consonant combinations which prevented umlaut from taking place in OHG., as *mähte, powers, hältet, he holds, wärmen, to warm* = OHG. *mahti, haltit, warmen* from **warmjan* (§ 10). It also occurs in derivatives ending in *-lich* and *-lin*, as *mänlich, manly, täglich, daily, väterlin, dim. of vater, father*; and in words which originally had an i in the third syllable, the vowel of the second syllable having become i by assimilation, as *mägede, maids, zäher(e), tears* = OHG. *magadi, zahari.*

ö is the umlaut of OHG. o, as *löcher*, *holes*, *möhte*, *I might* = OHG. *lohhr*, *mohti*; *götinne*, *goddess*, beside *got*, *God*.

ü is the umlaut of OHG. u, as *dünne*, *thin*, *süne*, *sons*, *züge*, *I might draw* = OHG. *dunni*, *sunī*, *zugī*.

2. The long vowels *ā*, *ē*, *ī*, *ō*, *ū* = the corresponding OHG. long vowels, as *sāt*, *seed*, *slāfen*, *to sleep*, *nāmen*, *we took*, *dāhte*, *he thought* = OHG. *sāt*, *slāfan*, *nāmum*, *dāhta*.

sēle, *soul*, *mēre*, *more*, *lēren*, *to teach* = OHG. *sēla*, *mēro*, *lēren*.

wīp, *wife*, *sīn*, *his*, *bīzen*, *to bite* = OHG. *wīb*, *sīn*, *bīzan*.

ōre, *ear*, *tōt*, *death*, *kōs*, *I chose* = OHG. *ōra*, *tōd*, *kōs*.

hūs, *house*, *tūsent*, *thousand*, *dūhte*, *it seemed* = OHG. *hūs*, *dūsunt*, *dūhta*.

æ is the umlaut of OHG. ā, as *lære*, *empty*, *næme*, *thou tookest* = OHG. *lāri*, *nāmi*.

œ is the umlaut of OHG. ō, as *schoene*, *beautiful*, *hœher*, *higher*, *hœren*, *to hear* = OHG. *scōni*, *hōhiro*, *hōren* from **hōrjan* older **hausjan*.

iu = (1) OHG. *iu* (diphthong), as *liute*, *people*, *kiuset*, *he chooses* = OHG. *liuti*, *kiusit*.

= (2) the umlaut of OHG. *ū*, as *hiuser*, *houses*, *briute*, *brides* = OHG. *hūsir*, *brūti*.

3. The diphthongs *ei*, *ou*, *uo* = the corresponding OHG. diphthongs, as *bein*, *bone*, *leiten*, *to lead*, *schreip*, *I wrote* = OHG. *bein*, *leiten*, *screib*.

ouge, *eye*, *houbet*, *head*, *bouc*, *I bent* = OHG. *ouga*, *houbit*, *boug*.

bruoder, *brother*, *stuont*, *I stood*, *vuor*, *I went* = OHG. *bruoder*, *stuont*, *fuor*.

ie = (1) OHG. *ie* (diphthong) older *ia*, *ea*, *ē* (Germanic *ē*), as *hier*, *here*, *miete*, *pay*, *reward*, *gienc*, *I went* = OHG. *hier*, *mieta*, *gieng*.

- = (2) OHG. *io* (Germanic *eu*), as *bieten*, *to offer*, *liep*, *dear* = OHG. *biotan*, *liob*.
- = (3) the OHG. *io* which occurs in the preterite of the old reduplicated verbs whose presents have *ou*, *ō*, *uo* (§ 87), as inf. *loufen*, *to run*, *stōzen*, *to push*, *ruofen*, *to call*, preterite *lief*, *stiez*, *rief* = OHG. *liof*, *stioz*, *riof*.
- = (4) Upper German *iu* (OHG. *io*) before labials and gutturals, as *liup*, *dear*, *tiuf*, *deep*, *siuch*, *sick*, *liugen*, *to tell a lie* = *liep*, *tief*, *siech*, *liegen*.
- öu* (*eu*) is the umlaut of OHG. *ou*, as *löuber*, *leaves*, *löufel*, *runner* = OHG. *loubir*, *loufil*.
- üe* is the umlaut of OHG. *uo*, as *grüene*, *green*, *güete*, *goodness*, *vüere*, *thou didst go* = OHG. *gruoni*, *guoti*, *fuori*.

UNACCENTED VOWELS AND UMLAUT.

§ 6. The two most characteristic differences between OHG. and MHG. are: (1) the spread of umlaut (§ 10); (2) the weakening and partial loss of vowels in unaccented syllables.

1. THE WEAKENING OF UNACCENTED VOWELS.

§ 7. The short vowels *a*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and the long vowels *ē*, *ī*, *ō*, *ū* were weakened to *e*. This *e* was pronounced like the final *-e* in NHG. *leute*, see § 3. Examples are:—

gēba, *gift*, *hērza*, *heart*, *zunga*, *tongue*, *taga*, *days* = MHG. *gēbe*, *hērze*, *zunge*, *tage*; *heilag*, *holy*, neut. *blindaz*, *blind*, *nēman*, *to take* = MHG. *heilec*, *blindez*, *nēmen*.

kunni, *race*, *generation*, *gesti*, *guests* = MHG. *künne*, *geste*; *kuning*, *king*, *bezzisto*, *best*, dat. pl. *gestim*, *to*

guests, gen. pl. *lembiro*, of *lambs*, *nimit*, he takes = MHG. *künec*, *bezzest* (beste), *gesten*, *lember(e)*, *nimet*.

haso, *hare*, nom. acc. pl. fem. *blinto*, *blind*, gen. pl. *tago*, of *days* = MHG. *hase*, *blinde*, *tage*; acc. sing. *hason*, *hare* = MHG. *hasen*.

fridu, *peace*, dat. sing. *gëbu*, to a gift, *nimu*, I take = MHG. *fride*, *gëbe*, *nime*; dat. pl. *tagum*, to days, *nāmum*, we took = MHG. *tagen*, *nāmen*.

Nom. sing. masc. *blintēr*, *blind*, *unsēr*, *our*, *habēn*, to have, *nēmēm*, we may take = MHG. *blinder*, *unser*, *haben*, *nēmen*.

scōnī, *beauty* = MHG. *schoēne*; *sālīg*, *blessed*, *nāmīm*, we might take = MHG. *sælec*, *næmen*.

salbōn, to anoint, *suohtōs(t)*, thou soughtest, dat. pl. *gëbōm*, *hërzōm* = MHG. *salben*, *suohtes(t)*, *gëben*, *hërzen*.

Gen. dat. acc. sing., nom. acc. pl. *zungūn* = MHG. *zungen*.

§ 8. The vowel in suffixal and derivative syllables was generally weakened to *e* just as in the inflexional syllables, but in some suffixal and derivative syllables which had a secondary accent the vowel was not weakened to *e*. This was especially the case with derivatives in *-ære* (denoting nomina agentis), *-inne*, *-inc (-ing)*, *linc (-ling)*, diminutives in *-īn* and *-līn*, abstract nouns in *-nisse (-nusse, -nüsse)*, *-unge*. In others the vowel fluctuated between the full vowel and *e*, as in *-isch* beside *-esch*; *-ic (= OHG. -ag, and -īg)* beside *-ec*; superlative of adjectives *-ist (= OHG. -ist)* beside *-est (= OHG. -ōst)*; *-sal* beside *-sel*. Beside the full forms *-līch*, *-rīch* occurred the shortened forms *-lich*, *-rich*.

The OHG. endings of the present participle *-anti*, *-enti*, *-ōnti*, *ēnti* regularly became *-ende*, but *-ant* occurs in a few old participles which had become nouns, as *heilant*, *Saviour*, *wīgant*, *warrior*, *vīant* beside *vīent (vīnt)*, *fiend*,

enemy. Examples are : *gartenære*, *gardener*, *schepfære*, *creator*, *schribære*, *scribe*.

küneginne, *queen*, *vriundinne*, *female friend*, *wirtinne*, *mistress*.

edelinc, *son of a nobleman*, *hendelinc*, *glove*, *vingerlinc*, *ring* ; *müedinc*, *unhappy man*.

magedin, *little girl*, *vingerin*, *ring* ; *kindelin*, *little child*, *vogelin*, *little bird*.

hindernisse, *hindrance*, *verdërbnisse*, *destruction*, *vinsternisse*, *darkness*, *vancnüsse*, *captivity*.

bezzerunge, *improvement*, *handelunge*, *action*, *mældunge*, *announcement*.

himelisch, *heavenly*, *irdisch*, *earthly*, *kindisch*, *childish*, *beside -esch*.

heilic (OHG. *heilag*), *holy*, *honic* (OHG. *honag*, *honig*), *honey*, *künic* (OHG. *cuning*, *cunig*), *king*, *manic* (OHG. *manag*), *many a*, *sælic* (OHG. *sālig*), *blessed*, *beside -ec*.

oberist *beside oberest*, *highest*.

kumbersal, *distress*, *trüebzal*, *gloom*, *wëhsal* *beside wëhsel*, *change*.

bitterlich, *bitterly*, *sicherlich*, *surely*, *wislich*, *wisely*, *beside -lich*.

Dietrich, *Heinrich*, *beside -rich*.

The OHG. pronominal ending of the nom. sing. fem. and the nom. acc. pl. neuter remained unweakened, as OHG. *blintiu* = MHG. *blindiu* (§ 55).

2. THE LOSS OF UNACCENTED VOWELS.

§ 9. The weakened *e* regularly disappeared :—

1. After *l* and *r* in dissyllables with short stems, as *ar*, *older are* (OHG. *aro*), *eagle*, acc. gen. dat. *arn*, *beside name*, *name*, *namen* ; *wol*, *older wole* (OHG. *wola*), *well* ; *gar* (OHG. *garo*), *ready*, *milch* (OHG. *milih*), *milk*, *zal* (OHG. *zala*), *number* ; *kil*, *quill*, gen. *kil(e)s*, dat. *kil*,

pl. nom. acc. **kil**, dat. **kil(e)n**, beside **tac**, *day*, gen. **tages**, dat. **tage**, pl. nom. acc. **tage**, dat. **tagen**; **bërn**, *to bear*, **stëln**, *to steal*, **nern**, *to rescue*, pres. sing. **stil**, **stils(t)**, **stilt**; **ner**, **ners(t)**, **nert**, beside **høeren**, *to hear*, pres. sing. **høere**, **høeres(t)**, **høeret**.

2. After liquids and nasals in trisyllabic and polysyllabic forms with long stems, as **sælde** (OHG. *sālista*), *blessedness*, **hërsen**, **hërsen** (OHG. *hërisōn*), *to rule*, **zierde** (OHG. *ziarida*), *adornment*, **wandelte** (OHG. *wantalōta*), *I wandered*, **zwifeln** (OHG. *zwīfalōn*), *to doubt*, **wundern** (OHG. *wuntarōn*), *to wonder*, **schøenste** (OHG. *scōnistō*), *most beautiful*, **diente**, **diende** (OHG. *dionōta*), *I served*; **dienest**, *service*, gen. **dienstes**; **engel**, *angel*, gen. **engel(e)s**, dat. **engel(e)**, pl. nom. acc. gen. **engel(e)**, dat. **engel(e)n**, and similarly with words like **acker**, *acre*, **lüter**, *clear*, **buosem**, *bosom*, **heiden**, *heathen*; **grøezer** (OHG. *grōzīro*), *greater*, fem. dat. sing. **grøezer** (OHG. *grōzīru*); dat. sing. **blindem(e)**, *blind*, **guotem(e)**, *good* = OHG. *blintemu*, **guotemu**; gen. pl. **blinder(e)** = OHG. *blintero*. After the analogy of forms with long stems it was also dropped in forms with short stems, as pl. **nagel**, *nails*, **vogel**, *birds*, beside **nagele**, **vogele**; **wider** beside **widere** (OHG. *widaro*), *wether*, dat. sing. **disem(e)**, *this*, **vadem(e)**, *thread*, gen. **vadem(e)s**.

There was however a strong tendency in MHG. for the medial vowel to disappear in trisyllabic forms with long stems irrespectively as to whether they contained a liquid or a nasal, as **market**, *market*, gen. **marktes**; **rīchsen** (OHG. *rīchisōn*), *to rule*, **ahte** (OHG. *ahtōta*), *he observed*, **wartte**, **warte** (OHG. *wartēta*), *he waited*, **vrāgte** beside **vrāgete** (OHG. *frāgēta*), *he asked*, **dancte** beside **dankete** (OHG. *dankōta*), *he thanked*. See § 92.

3. In the medial syllable of trisyllabic forms with long stems having liquids or nasals in successive syllables, as **dīme** beside **dīneme** (OHG. *dīnemu*), dat. of **dīn**, *thy*;

eime beside ein(e)me (OHG. *einemu*), dat. of *ein*, *one*; *hërre*, *hërre* (OHG. *hëriro*), *master*; *minre* beside *minner(e)* (OHG. *minniro*), *less*; *tiurre* (OHG. *tiuriro*), *dearer*.

4. Finally after a nasal, and medially after a nasal before a following *t*, in forms with short stems, as *han(e)*, *cock*, *nam(e)*, *name*, *sun* (OHG. *sun*, *sunu*), *son*, *won(e)*, *I dwell*; *man(e)t*, *he admonishes*, *won(e)t*, *he dwells*, *scham(e)t*, *he shames*, *nim(e)t*, *he takes*, *nëm(e)t*, *ye take*; pret. *won(e)te*, *scham(e)te*. In these and similar forms the *e* was often restored through the influence of forms which regularly preserved the *e*.

NOTE.—The *e*, when not preceded by a nasal, was sometimes dropped in verbal forms ending in *t*. This was especially the case in *wirst*, *wirt* older *wirdes(t)*, *wirdet*; *siht*, *he sees*, *sëht*, *ye see*, older *sihet*, *sëhet*; and often in forms like *gilt*, *vint*, *spricht*, *sticht* beside *giltet*, *vindet*, *sprichet*, *stichet*.

5. The superlative of adjectives often has double forms, the one with the loss of the medial *e*, and the other with the loss of the final *e*, as *beste*, *best*, *ërste*, *first*, *grœste*, *greatest*, *leste*, *last*, *min(ne)ste*, *least*, *wir(se)ste*, *worst*, beside *bezzest(e)*, *ërest(e)*, *græzest(e)*, *lezzest(e)*, *minnest(e)*, *wirsest(e)*, OHG. *bezzisto*, *ëristo*, *grōzisto*, *lezzisto*, *minnisto*, *wirsisto*.

6. In the unstressed forms of dissyllables, as adv. *ane*, *abe*, *mite*, *obe* beside the prepositions *an*, *on*, *ab*, *of*, *mit*, *with*, *ob*, *over*; dat. sing. *dëme*, *wëme*, *ime*, beside *dëm*, *wëm*, *im*; *unde*, *and*, *wande*, *for*, *because*, beside *und (unt)*, *wan(d)*; *hërre*, *vrouwe*, beside *hër*, *vrou* before proper names and titles.

7. The *e* in the unaccented verbal prefixes *be-*, *ge-* often disappeared before *l*, *n*, *r*, as *bliben*, *to remain*, *glich*, *like*, *glit*, *member*, *glouben*, *to believe*, *gnāde*, *favour*, *gnanne*, *namesake*, *gnuoge*, *many*, *grade*, *quick*, *grëch*, *straight*,

beside *beliben*, *gelich*, *gelit*, *gelouben*, *genāde*, *genanne*, *genuoge*, *gerade*, *gerëch*; it disappeared before vowels during the OHG. period, as *bange*, *anxious*: *ange*, *anxiously*, *gëzzan* p.p. of *ëzzan*, *to eat*, *gunnan*, MHG. *gunnen*, *günnen*, *to grant*.

3. UMLAUT.

§ 10. By umlaut is meant the modification (palatalization) of an accented vowel through the influence of an *ī* or *j* which originally stood in the following syllable. The only vowel which underwent this change in OHG. was *a*, which became close *e* (§ 2, note).

The change is first met with in OHG. monuments about the middle of the eighth century. In the ninth century the process was practically complete except when the *a* was followed by certain consonant combinations which prevented umlaut from taking place. These consonant combinations were:—

1. *ht*, *hs*, or consonant + *w*, as *maht*, *power*, pl. *mahti*; *wahsit*, *he grows*, inf. *wahsan*; *bi-scatwen* from **.sca-twjān*, *to shade*.

2. In Upper German before *l* + consonant, before *hh*, *ch* (= Germanic *k*), and often before *r* + consonant, and before *h* (= Germanic *h*), as Upper German *haltit* beside Upper Franconian *heltit*, *he holds*, inf. *haltan*; UG. *altiro* beside UF. *eltiro*, *older*; UG. *sachit* beside UF. *sehhit*, *he quarrels*, inf. *sachan*, Goth. *sakan*; UG. *warmen* beside *wermen*, Goth. *warmjan*, *to warm*; UG. *slahit* beside *slehit*, *he strikes*, inf. OHG. *slahan*, Goth. *slahan*.

3. In words ending in *-nissi*, *-nissa*, or *-lih*, as *firstant-nissi*, *understanding*; *infancnissa*, *assumption*; *kraftlih*, *strong*; *tagalih*, *daily*.

Umlaut must have taken place earlier in the spoken language than it is expressed in late OHG. and early

MHG. manuscripts, because the *ī* which caused the umlaut was weakened to *e* in MHG. (§ 7) and *j* had disappeared except between vowels. The vowels and diphthongs which underwent umlaut in MHG. are *a*, *o*, *u*, *ā*, *ō*, *ū*, *ou*, *uo*. The umlaut of all these sounds was completed by about the year 1200.

a > *e*: *gast*, *guest*, pl. *geste* (OHG. *gesti*); *lamp*, *lamb*, pl. *lember* (OHG. *lembir*); *Inf. graben*, *to dig*, pres. second and third pers. sing. *grebes(t)*, *grebet* (OHG. *grebis*, *grebit*); *lanc*, *long*, beside *lenge* (OHG. *lengī*), *length*; *brennen*, Goth. *brannjan*, *to burn*; *bette* (OHG. *betti*), *bed*.

a > *ä*: From the twelfth century onwards the umlaut of *a* also occurs—often beside forms without umlaut—in words containing the consonant combinations which prevented umlaut from taking place in OHG., as pl. *mähte* (OHG. *mahti*), *powers*; *geslähte* (OHG. *gislahti*), *race*, *generation*; *wähset* (OHG. *wahsit*), *he grows*; *wärmen* (OHG. *warmen*, older **warmjan*), *to warm*; Upper German *älter* (OHG. *altiro*), *older*; *kälte* (OHG. *kalti*), *coldness*; *hältet* (OHG. *haltit*), *he holds*; *äher* (OHG. *ahir*), *ear of corn*; *slähet* (OHG. *slahit*), *he strikes*. It also occurs in derivatives ending in *-lich*, *-līn*, as *mänlich*, *manly*, *schämelich*, *shameful*, *tägelich*, *daily*, *väterlich*, *fatherly*, *väterlīn*, dim. of *vater*, *father*. It is likewise met with in MHG. words which originally had an *i* in the third syllable, the vowel of the second syllable having become *i* by assimilation, as *frävele* (OHG. *frafali*), *bold*, pl. *mägede* (OHG. *magadi*), *maids*, pl. *zäher(e)* (OHG. *zahari*), *tears*. See § 2, Note.

o > *ö*: Although *ö*, the umlaut of *o*, is common in MHG. and still commoner in NHG., yet all words containing this umlaut are really new formations due to levelling or analogy, because primitive Germanic *u* (§ 15) did not become *o* in OHG. when followed by an *ī* or *j* in

the next syllable. Examples are : **boc**, *he-goat*, beside *dim. böcklīn* (OHG. *pochilī*) ; **dorf**, *village*, beside *pl. dörfer* ; **got**, *God*, beside *götinne*, *goddess* ; **hof**, *court*, beside *hövesch*, *courtly* ; **loch** (OHG. *loh*), *hole*, beside *pl. löcher* (OHG. *lohhir*) ; **tochter**, *daughter*, beside *dim. töchterlīn* ; *pret. subj. möhte* (OHG. *mohti*), *I might* ; **törste** (OHG. *torsti*), *I might dare*.

u > ü : **dünne** (OHG. *dunni*), *thin* ; **künne** (OHG. *kunni*), *race, generation* ; *pl. süne* (OHG. *sunī*), *sons* ; **tür** (OHG. *turi*), *door* ; *pret. subj. züge* (OHG. *zugi*), *inf. ziehen*, *to draw*.

NOTE.—In Upper German certain consonant combinations often prevented umlaut from taking place where it might be expected. Of these the principal are :—

1. Before a liquid + consonant, as **hulde** (OHG. *huldī*), *favour* ; **schuldec** (OHG. *sculdīg*), *guilty* ; **gedultec** (OHG. *gidultīg*), *indulgent* ; **burge** (OHG. *burgi*), *dat. of burc, city* ; **sturbe** (OHG. *sturbi*), *pret. subj. of stēren, to die* ; **wurfe** (OHG. *wurfi*), *pret. subj. of wēren, to throw*, cp. 2 above.

2. **u** fluctuates with **ü** when followed by a nasal + consonant, as **dunken**, *to seem*, **umbe**, *about*, **wunne**, *joy*, beside **dünken**, **ümbe** (OHG. *umbi*), **wünne**. This fluctuation is especially common in the *pret. subjunctive*, as **bunde**, **sunge**, beside **bünde**, **sünge**, *inf. binden, to bind, singen, to sing*.

3. **u** fluctuates with **ü** when followed by **gg**, **ck**, **pf**, **tz**, **zz**, **st**, **ch**, and **g**, as **brugge**, **brügge**, **brucke**, **brücke**, *bridge* ; **mugge**, **mügge**, **mucke**, **mücke**, *midge* ; **drucken**, **drücken**, *to press* ; **hupfen**, **hüpfen**, *to hop* ; **schupfen**, **schüpfen**, *to push* : **nutzen**, **nützen**, *to use* ; *pret. subj. fluzze, flüzze* ; **schuzze**, **schüzze**, *inf. fliezen, to flow, schiezen, to shoot* ; *pl. bruste, brüste, breasts* ; **kuchen**, **küchen**, *kitchen* ; *pret. subj. fluge, flüge, inf. fliegen, to fly*.

ā > æ : **lære** (OHG. *lāri*), *empty* ; **mære** (OHG. *māri*), *renowned* ; **sæjen** (OHG. *sājan*), *to sow* ; *pret. subj. næme* (OHG. *nāmi*), *pl. næmen* (OHG. *nāmīm*), *inf. nēmen, to take*.

ō > œ : **hæher** (OHG. **hōhiro**), *higher* ; **hæhest** (OHG. **hōhisto**), *highest* ; **hæren** (OHG. **hōren**, from older ***hōrjan**), *to hear* ; **schœne** (OHG. **scōni**), *beautiful*.

ū > iu : pl. **briute** (OHG. **brūti**), *brides* ; **hiuser** (OHG. **hūsir**), *houses*.

Traces of the umlaut of ū, written iu (= ū), occur in late OHG. monuments of the tenth century. It is common in the writings of Notker († 1022), as **hiute** older **hūti**, *skins* ; **chriuter** older **chrūtir**, *herbs*. In other writings of the tenth to the twelfth century the umlaut of ū is seldom found. Umlaut did not take place in Upper German before a following **m**, as **rūmen** from ***rūmjan**, *to make room* ; **sūmen** from ***sūmjan**, *to tarry*.

ou > öu, often written eu, rarely oi, öi : **löufel** (OHG. **loufil**), *runner* ; **löuber** (OHG. **loubir**), *leaves*.

Umlaut of ou did not take place in the combination **ouw** = OHG. **ouw**, **auw**, West Germanic **aww**, primitive Germanic **awj**, as **frouwe** (OHG. **frouwa**, prim. Germanic ***frawjō-**), *woman* ; **ouwe** (OHG. **ouwa**, **auwia**, prim. Germanic ***a(g)wjō-**), *meadow* ; **frouwen** (OHG. **frouwen**, prim. Germanic ***frawjan**), *to rejoice*, and similarly **douwen**, *to digest*, **drouwen**, *to threaten*, **strouwen**, *to strew*. Forms like **fröuwen**, **döuwen**, **dröuwen**, **ströuwen** were analogical formations due to the influence of the pres. second and third pers. singular and the preterite which regularly had umlaut ; see the Author's Historical German Grammar, § 232.

Umlaut of ou did not take place in Upper German before labials and **g**, as **erlouben**, *to allow*, **gelouben**, *to believe*, **houbet**, *head*, **koufen**, *to buy*, **troumen**, *to dream*, **toufen**, *to baptize*, **bougen**, *to bend*, **ougen**, *to show*, beside Middle German **erlöuben**, **gelöuben**, **höubet**, **köufen**, **tröumen**, **töufen**, **böugen**, **öugen**.

uo > üe : **grüene** (OHG. **gruoni**), *green* ; **güete** (OHG. **guotī**), *goodness* ; **vüeze** (OHG. **fuozi**), *feet* ; pret. pl. subj.

vüeren (OHG. *fuorīm*), *we might go*, inf. **varn**, *to fare, go*; **buoch**, *book*, dim. **büechlin**; **muoter**, *mother*, dim. **müeterlin**.

THE MHG. EQUIVALENTS OF THE OHG. VOWELS.

§ 11. OHG. had the following short vowels, long vowels, and diphthongs:—

Short Vowels	a, e, ë,	i,	o,	u.
Long „	ā, ē,	ī,	ō,	ū.
Diphthongs	ei,	ie (ia, ea),	ou (au),	uo.
		io (eo),		
		iu.		

The following are the MHG. equivalents of the above simple vowels and diphthongs in accented syllables:—

1. The short vowels: Apart from the changes caused by umlaut, viz. **a** to **ä**, **o** to **ö**, **u** to **ü** (§ 10), and of **ë** to **e** before certain consonants, the OHG. short vowels remained in MHG., as

a = (1) MHG. **a**, as OHG. **fater**, *father*, **tag**, *day*, **faran**, *to go* = MHG. **vater**, **tac**, **varn**.

= (2) MHG. **ä**, in words containing the consonant combinations which prevented umlaut from taking place in OHG., as OHG. **mahti**, *powers*, **kalti**, *coldness*, **ahir**, *ear of corn*, **warmen**, *to warm* = MHG. **mähte**, **kälte**, **äher**, **wärmen**, see § 10.

e = MHG. **e**, as OHG. **gesti**, *guests*, **lembir**, *lambs*, **brennen**, *to burn* = MHG. **geste**, **lemben**, **brennen**.

ë = (1) MHG. **ë**, as OHG. **wëg**, *way*, **hëlfan**, *to help*, **stëlan**, *to steal* = MHG. **wëc**, **hëlfen**, **stëln**.

= (2) MHG. **e**, before **st**, **sch**, and palatal **g**, as OHG. **nëst**, *nest*, **swëster**, *sister* = MHG. **nest**,

swester; and similarly, **gestern**, *yesterday*, **deste**, *all the more*, **weste**, *I knew*, **dreschen**, *to thrash*, **leschen**, *to go out*, **degen**, *warrior*; and also in a few words before a following **l**, as **helm**, *helmet*, **vels**, *rock*, **welch**, *which*, &c.

i = MHG. **i**, as OHG. **fisk**, *fish*, **nimu**, *I take*, **wizzan**, *to know* = MHG. **visch**, *nime*, **wizzen**.

o = (1) MHG. **o**, as OHG. **got**, *God*, p.p. **giholfan**, *helped*, **tohter**, *daughter* = MHG. **got**, **geholfen**, **tohter**.

= (2) MHG. **ö**, as OHG. **lohhir**, *holes*, **mohti**, *I might* = MHG. **löcher**, **möhte**.

u = (1) MHG. **u**, as OHG. **sunu**, *sun*, **son**, **butum**, *we offered*, **buntum**, *we bound* = MHG. **sun**, **buten**, **bunden**.

= (2) MHG. **ü**, as OHG. **dunni**, *thin*, **sun**, *sons* = MHG. **dünne**, **süne**.

2. The long vowels: Apart from the changes caused by umlaut, viz. **ā** to **æ**, **ō** to **œ**, and **ū** to **iu** (§ 10), the OHG. long vowels remained in MHG., as

ā = (1) MHG. **ā**, as OHG. **sāt**, *seed*, **slāfan**, *to sleep*, **dāhta**, *I thought* = MHG. **sāt**, **slāfen**, **dāhte**.

= (2) MHG. **æ**, as OHG. **lāri**, *empty*, **nāmi**, *I might take* = MHG. **lære**, **næme**.

ē = MHG. **ē**, as OHG. **ēra**, *honour*, **lēren**, *to teach*, **sēla**, *soul* = MHG. **ēre**, **lēren**, **sēle**.

ī = MHG. **ī**, as OHG. **sīn**, *his*, **wīb**, *woman*, **snīdan**, *to cut* = MHG. **sīn**, **wīp**, **snīden**.

ō = (1) MHG. **ō**, as OHG. **ōra**, *ear*, **tōd**, *death*, **kōs**, *I chose* = MHG. **ōre**, **tōt**, **kōs**.

= (2) MHG. **œ**, as OHG. **hōhiro**, *higher*, **hōren**, *to hear*, **scōni**, *beautiful* = MHG. **hœher**, **hœren**, **schœne**.

ū = (1) MHG. **ū**, as OHG. **hūs**, *house*, **rūm**, *room*, **dūhta**, *it seemed* = MHG. **hūs**, **rūm**, **dūhte**.

= (2) MHG. *iu*, as OHG. *hūsir*, *houses*, *brūti*, *brides*
= MHG. *hiuser*, *briute*.

3. The diphthongs :

ei = MHG. *ei*, as OHG. *bein*, *bone*, *leiten*, *to lead*,
sneid, *I cut* = MHG. *bein*, *leiten*, *sneit*.

ie (older *ia*, *ea* = Germanic *ē*) = MHG. *ie*, as OHG.
hier, *here*, *mieta*, *reward*, *hielt*, *I held*, *hiez*,
I called, *slief*, *I slept* = MHG. *hier*, *miete*,
hielt, *hiez*, *slief*.

io (*eo*) = Germanic *eu* (§ 16), and the *io* (*eo*) in the preterites of the old reduplicated verbs whose presents have *ou*, *ō*, *uo* (§ 87).

= MHG. *ie*, as OHG. *liob*, *dear*, *biotan*, *to offer*
= MHG. *liep*, *bieten*; OHG. *liof*, *I ran*,
stioz, *I pushed*, *riof*, *I called* = MHG. *lief*,
stiez, *rief*.

iu = MHG. *ū* written *iu*, as OHG. *liuti*, *people*, *kiusit*,
he chooses = MHG. *liute*, *kiuset*.

ou (older *au*) = (1) MHG. *ou*, as OHG. *ouga*, *eye*, *boug*,
I bent, *loufan*, *to run* = MHG.
ouge, *bouc*, *loufen*.

= (2) MHG. *öu* (*eu*), as OHG. *loubir*,
leaves, *loufil*, *runner* = MHG. *löu-*
ber, *löufel*.

uo = (1) MHG. *uo*, as OHG. *bruoder*, *brother*, *muoter*,
mother, *stuont*, *I stood* = MHG. *bruoder*,
muoter, *stuont*.

= (2) MHG. *üe*, as OHG. *gruoni*, *green*, *fuozi*, *feet*,
= MHG. *grüene*, *vüeze*.

ABLAUT (VOWEL GRADATION).

§ 12. By ablaut is meant the gradation of vowels both in stem and suffix, which was chiefly caused by the primitive Indo-Germanic system of accentuation. See the Author's Historical German Grammar, § 23.

The vowels vary within certain series of related vowels, called ablaut-series. In MHG. there are six such series, which appear most clearly in the stem-forms of strong verbs. Four stem-forms are to be distinguished in a MHG. strong verb which has vowel gradation as the characteristic mark of its different stems:—(1) the present stem, to which belong all the forms of the present, (2) the stem of the first or third person of the preterite singular, (3) the stem of the preterite plural, to which belong the second person of the preterite singular and the whole of the preterite subjunctive, (4) the stem of the past participle.

By arranging the vowels according to these four stems we arrive at the following system:—

	i.	ii.	iii.	iv.
I.	ī	ei, ē	i	i
II.	ie	ou, ō	u	o
III.	i, ě	a	u	u, o
IV.	ë	a	ā	o
V.	ē	a	ā	ē
VI.	a	uo	uo	a

NOTE.—I. On the difference between *ei* and *ē*, see § 17; *ou* and *ō*, § 18; and in Series III *i* and *ě*, § 14; *u* and *o*, § 15.

2. Strong verbs belonging to Series II have *iu* in the indicative pres. singular; and strong verbs belonging to Series III–V with *ě* in the infinitive have *i* in the indicative pres. singular (§§ 14, 16).

EXAMPLES.

I.	<i>sniden, to cut</i>	<i>snīde</i>	<i>sneit</i>	<i>sniten</i>	<i>gesniten;</i>
	<i>lihen, to lend</i>	<i>lihe</i>	<i>lēch</i>	<i>lihen</i>	<i>gelihen.</i>
II.	<i>biegen, to bend</i>	<i>biuge</i>	<i>bouc</i>	<i>bugen</i>	<i>gebogen;</i>
	<i>sieden, to seethe</i>	<i>siude</i>	<i>sōt</i>	<i>suten</i>	<i>gesoten.</i>
III.	<i>binden, to bind</i>	<i>binde</i>	<i>bant</i>	<i>bunden</i>	<i>gebunden;</i>
	<i>helfen, to help</i>	<i>hilfe</i>	<i>half</i>	<i>hulfen</i>	<i>geholfen.</i>

IV.	nēmen, <i>to take</i>	nime	nam	nāmen	genomen.
V.	gēben, <i>to give</i>	gibe	gap	gāben	gegēben.
VI.	graben, <i>to dig</i>	grabe	gruop	gruoben	gegraben.

For further examples see the various classes of strong verbs §§ 76-86. Class VII of strong verbs embracing the old reduplicated verbs (§ 87) has been omitted from the ablaut-series, because the exact relation in which the vowel of the present stands to that of the preterite has not yet been satisfactorily explained.

OTHER VOWEL CHANGES.

§ 13. Most of the following vowel changes took place in prehistoric times; but as they play an important part in the verbs and word-formation, &c., we shall give them here.

§ 14. *ë* (= Indo-Germanic *e*) became *i* in the prehistoric period of all the Germanic languages:—

1. Before a nasal + consonant, as OE. *wind*, OHG. MHG. *wint*, Lat. *ventus*, *wind*; OHG. *fimf*, *finf*, Gr. *πέντε*, *five*. This explains why verbs like MHG. *binden*, *to bind*, *rinnen*, *to run*, *singen*, *to sing*, belong to the same ablaut-series as *helfen*, *to help*, *wërden*, *to become*.

2. Before other consonants when followed by an *ī* or *j* in the next syllable, and further in OHG. when followed by an *u* in the next syllable, as OHG. MHG. *ist*, Gr. *ἐστί*, *is*; OHG. *fihu*, Lat. *pecu*, *cattle*; *ërde* (OHG. *ërda*), *earth*, but *irdin*, *earthen*; *ligen* (OHG. *liggen* from **ligjan*), *to lie down*, *sitzen* (OHG. *sitzen* from **sitjan*), *to sit*, but p.p. *gelëgen* (OHG. *gilëgan*), *gesëzzzen* (OHG. *gisëzzzan*). This explains why strong verbs belonging to the fourth (§§ 12, 82) and fifth (§§ 12, 83) ablaut-series have *i* throughout the present singular, and similarly in verbs belonging to the third (§§ 12, 81) series with *ë* in the infinitive, as

OHG.	nēman,	to take,	three persons sing.	nimu, nimis(t), nimit.
MHG.	nēmen,	„	„	nime, nimes(t), nimet.
OHG.	gēban,	to give,	„	gibu, gibis(t), gibit.
MHG.	gēben,	„	„	gibe, gibes(t), gibet.
OHG.	hēlfan,	to help,	„	hilfu, hilfis(t), hilfit.
MHG.	helfen,	„	„	hilfe, hilfes(t), hilfet.

§ 15. **u**, followed originally by an **ǣ**, **ö**, or **ē** in the next syllable, became **o** when not protected by a nasal + consonant or an intervening **i** or **j**; hence the interchange between **u** and **o** in the preterite plural and past participle of verbs belonging to the second ablaut-series (§§ 12, 78), as **bugen** (OHG. **bugum**), *we bent*, p.p. **gebogen** (OHG. **gibogan**); in the p.p. of verbs belonging to the third ablaut-series (§§ 12, 81), as **gebunden** (OHG. **gibuntan**), but **geholfen** (OHG. **giholfan**); in weak verbs as **fürhten** (OHG. **furhten** from ***furhtjan**), *to fear*, beside pret. **vorhte** (OHG. **forhta**); **hügen** (OHG. **huggen** from ***hugjan**) beside **hogen** (OHG. **hogēn**), *to think*; in preterite presents like **durfen** (OHG. **durfum**), *we dare*, beside pret. **dorfte** (OHG. **dorfta**); in many nouns and adjectives, as **wolle** (OHG. **wolla**), *wool*, beside **wüllin**, **wullin**, *woollen*; **wolf** (stem ***wulfo-**), *wolf*, beside **wülpinne**, *she-wolf*; **vol**, *full*, beside **vülle** (OHG. **fulli**), *fulness*; **golt**, *gold*, beside **guldin**, *golden*.

§ 16. From primitive Germanic **eu** were developed two different diphthongs in OHG., viz. **eu** became **eo** (cp. § 15), later **io**, when originally followed by an **ǣ**, **ö**, or **ē** in the next syllable, and this **io** was regularly developed to **ie**

in MHG. ; whereas **eu** became **iu** in OHG. when originally followed by an **ī, j** or **u** in the next syllable, and this **iu** became **ū** (written **iu**) in MHG., even after the **ī, j** or **u** had been weakened to **e**. This law explains the difference between the diphthong **ie** in the infinitive and the simple vowel **iu** (= **ū**) in the three persons singular of the present indicative of verbs belonging to the second ablaut-series (§§ 12, 78), as

OHG. **blogan**, *to bend*, pres. sing. **biugu**, **biugis(t)**, **biugit** ;
MHG. **biegen**, „ „ „ **biuge**, **biuges(t)**, **biuget**.

Cp. further **tief** (OHG. **tiof**), *deep*, beside OHG. **tiufī**, *depth* ; **lieht** (OHG. **lioht**), *a light*, beside **liuhten** (OHG. **liuhten** from ***liuhtjan**), *to light*.

NOTE.—The **iu** in the above and similar examples must not be confounded with the **iu** in the OHG. and MHG. combination **iuw** which arose from prim. Germanic **eww** (= **euw**), and **ewj**, as **triuwe** (OHG. **triuwi**, Goth. **triggws**), *true* ; **triuwen**, **trūwen**, *to trust*, pret. **triuete**, **triute**, **trūte** ; **riuwe** (OHG. **riuwa**), *regret*, **bliuwen** (OHG. **bliuwan**, Goth. **bliggwan**), *to strike*, and similarly, **briuwen**, *to brew*, **kiuwen**, *to chew*, **riuwen**, *to regret* ; **niuwe** (OHG. **niuwi**, Goth. **niujis**, prim. Germanic stem-form ***newja-**), *new*. This **iu** before **w** never interchanged with MHG. **ie** from prim. Germanic **eu**, and explains why the strong verbs **bliuwen**, &c. have **iu** in all forms of the present.

§ 17. Accented primitive Germanic **ai** (= Goth. **ái**) became **ē** in OHG. before **r**, **w**, Germanic **h** (cp. § 23, 1), and finally ; in MHG. it appears also as **ē** before the same consonants and finally, as **mēre**, **mēr** (OHG. **mēro**, Goth. **máiza**), *more*, **lēren** (OHG. **lēren**, Goth. **láisjan**), *to teach* ; **sēle** (OHG. **sēla**, older **sēula**, Goth. **sáiwala**), *soul* ; **snē** (OHG. **snēo**, Goth. **snáiws**), *snow*, gen. OHG. and MHG. **snēwes** ; **spīwen**, *to spit*, pret. **spē** (OHG. **spēo**, Goth. **spáiw**) ; **dīhen**, *to thrive*, pret. **dēch** (OHG. **dēh**, Goth. **dáih**) ; **wē** (OHG. **wē**, Goth. **wái**), *woe!* ; in all other cases **ai** became **ei** in both OHG. and MHG., as **stein**

(Goth. *stáins*), *stone*, *heizen* (OHG. *heizan*, Goth. *háitan*), *to call*; *sniden*, *to cut*, pret. *sneit* (OHG. *sneid*, Goth. *snáip*). This accounts for the difference between the *ei* and *ē* in the preterite singular of strong verbs belonging to the first ablaut-series (§§ 12, 76).

§ 18. Primitive Germanic *au* became *ō* in OHG. before the consonants *d, t, z, s, n, r, l*, and Germanic *h* (cp. 23, 1). Before other consonants and finally *au* became *ou* in the ninth century. Hence the difference between *ō* and *ou* in the preterite singular of strong verbs belonging to the second ablaut-series (§§ 12, 78), as :—

	Infinitive	<i>bieten</i> , <i>to offer</i> ,	pret. sing.	<i>bōt</i>
	„	<i>sieden</i> , <i>to seethe</i> ,	„ „	<i>sōt</i>
	„	<i>kiesen</i> , <i>to choose</i> ,	„ „	<i>kōs</i>
	„	<i>diezen</i> , <i>to roar</i> ,	„ „	<i>dōz</i>
	„	<i>vliehen</i> , <i>to flee</i> ,	„ „	<i>vlōch</i> (OHG. <i>flōh</i>);
but	„	<i>biegen</i> , <i>to bend</i> ,	„ „	<i>bouc</i>
	„	<i>klieben</i> , <i>to cleave</i>	„ „	<i>kloup</i> .

CHAPTER II

THE CONSONANTS

I. PRONUNCIATION OF THE CONSONANTS.

§ 19. The MHG. consonant-system was represented by the following letters : *b, c, ch, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, sch, t, v, w, (x), z, z.*

The letters *k, l, m, n, p, t, w, (x)* had nearly the same sound-values as in English. The remaining letters require special attention.

When the pronunciation of consonants merely differs in the intensity or force with which they are produced,

they are called *fortes* or *lenes* according as they are produced with more or less intensity or force. In MHG. the consonants **b**, **d**, **g** were not voiced explosives like English **b**, **d**, **g**, but were voiceless *lenes*, and only differed from the *fortes* **p**, **t**, **k** in being produced with less intensity or force, see § 33. A similar difference in pronunciation existed between antevocalic and intervocalic **v**, **s** and final **f**, **s**, see § 33.

c and **k** represented the same sound. The latter was generally used at the beginning, and the former at the end of a syllable, as **kunst**, *art*; **trinken**, *to drink*, **senken**, *to sink* (trans.), pret. **tranc**, **sancte**.

ch had the same sound as in NHG. **nacht**, **noch**, as **sprechen**, *to speak*, pret. **sprach**; **hōch**, *high*.

f had a twofold pronunciation in the oldest HG. It was a labiodental when it arose from Germanic **f** (cp. OHG: **fater**, English **father**), and bilabial when it arose from Germanic **p** (cp. inf. OHG. **slāfan**, English **sleep**), but during the OHG. period the bilabial **f** became labiodental. The two kinds of **f** did not however completely fall together in pronunciation. **f** = Germanic **f** became a *lenis* initially before and medially between vowels, and was often written **v** in the former and generally **v** in the latter position, but remained a *fortis*—written **f**—when final. In MHG. it was also often written **f** initially before **l**, **r**, **u**, as **fliehen**, *to flee*, **fride**, *peace*, **fünf**, *five*, beside **vliehen**, **vride**, **vünf**. On the other hand **f** = Germanic **p** (§ 22, 1), which only occurred medially and finally, was a *fortis* and was always written **f** (**ff**), as **slāfen**, *to sleep*, pret. **slief**; **tief**, *deep*, **schif** (gen. **schiffes**), *ship*, **offen**, *open*. The two **f** sounds thus fell together when final, but the distinction between the two sounds was still preserved in MHG. in the intervocalic position, as **hof**, *court*, **schif**, *ship*, but gen. **hoves**, **schiffes**.

h before and after consonants was pronounced like **ch**,

as **fuhs**, *fox*, **naht**, *night*, **bevêlhen**, *to confide*. In other cases it had the same sound as the **h** in English **hat**.

j had nearly the same sound as the **y** in English **yet**, as **jār**, *year*, **junc**, *young*; **blüejen**, *to blossom*.

q occurred only in combination with **u** as in English, as **quēc**, *quick*, **quēden**, *to say*.

r was a trilled sound in all positions like Scotch **r**, as **rôt**, *red*, **hart**, *hard*, **bërn**, *to bear*, **vater**, *father*.

s was a lenis medially between vowels and probably also initially before vowels, but a fortis in other positions, as **sun**, *son*, **wësen**, *to be*, pret. **was**, **bresten**, *to burst*. It may be pronounced like the **s** in English **sit**.

sch was like the **sh** in English **ship**, as **schif**, *ship*, **geschêhen**, *to happen*, **visch**, *fish*.

v was a voiceless lenis, and may be pronounced like the **v** in NHG. **voll**. See **f**.

w was pronounced like the **w** in English **wet**, as **wîn**, *wine*, **bliuwen**, *to strike*.

z and **z̥** were not distinguished in MHG. manuscripts, both being written **z**. Both **z** and **z̥** (but **zz̥** medially between vowels when the first vowel was short) arose from Germanic **t** (see § 23). **z** had the sound-value of **ts** (= NHG. **z**): (a) always initially, as **zît**, *time*; (b) medially and finally after consonants (**l**, **m**, **n**, **r**), as **holz** (gen. **holzes**), *wood*, **hërze**, *heart*, **smërze**, *pain*, **ganz**, *whole*; (c) finally after vowels (= Germanic **tt**) in those words which change final **z** to **tz** when it becomes medial, as **schaz** (gen. **schatzes**), OE. **sceatt**, *money*, *treasure*. MHG. intervocalic **tz** always arose from older **tt**, as **setzen** = OE. **settan**, *to set*. **z̥** was a kind of lisped **s** and only occurred medially between and finally after vowels, as **bîzen**, *to bite*, **ëzzen**, *to eat*, **haz**, *hatred*. It should be noted that good MHG. poets never rhymed pairs of words like **was**, *was*, and **waz**, *what*; **missen**, *to miss*, and **wizzen**, *to know*.

ph and **pf** represent the same sound, viz. the **pf** in NHG. **pfund**, *pound*.

§ 20. MHG. has the following double consonants medially between vowels: **bb**, **gg**; **pp**, **tt**, **ck**; **ff**, **ss**, **zz**; **mm**, **nn**; **ll**, **rr**. They were always pronounced long as in Italian and Swedish, as **bit-ter**, *bitter*, **ēz-zen**, *to eat*, **kūs-sen**, *to kiss*, **müg-ge**, *midge*, **rin-nen**, *to run*. In NHG. double consonants are never long, they merely indicate that the preceding vowel is short.

§ 21. Phonetic Survey of the MHG. Consonants.

	LABIAL.	DENTAL.	GUTTURAL.
Voiceless	{ fortis p , pp lenis b , bb	t , tt	k , ck
explosives		d	g , gg
Spirants	{ fortis f , ff lenis v	{ s , ss , sch , z , zz s	h (ch)
Nasals	m , mm	n , nn	n (= ŋ)
Liquids		l , ll ; r , rr	
Semi-vowels	w , j (palatal)		

To the above must be added the aspirate **h** and the affricatae (i.e. an explosive + a homorganic spirant) **z** (i.e. **ts**) and **pf** (**ph**).

2. CONSONANT CHANGES.

§ 22. The most characteristic difference between High German and the other West Germanic languages is the shifting which the consonants **p**, **t**, **k**, **þ**; **pp**, **tt**, **kk**, **þþ**; **b** (**þ**), **d**, **g** (**g**); **bb**, **dd**, **gg** underwent partly in the pre-historic and partly in the historic period of Old High German. In the following treatment of what is generally called the High German sound-shifting only such points are considered as are of importance for the purposes of this book. See Old High German Primer, §§ 82-6.

§ 23. The voiceless explosives **p, t, k** underwent a two-fold treatment according to their position in the word : (1) Medially or finally after vowels ; (2) Initially, medially and finally after consonants (**l, m, n, r**), and when doubled.

NOTE.—**p, t, k** remained unshifted in the combinations **sp, st, sk** as also **t** in the combinations **tr, ht, ft**.

1. Single **p, t, k** were shifted to the voiceless double spirants **ff, zz, hh** (also written **ch**) = MHG. **ff** (**f**), **zz** (**z**), **ch**.

p > ff. OE. *open*, OHG. *offan*, MHG. *offen*, *open* ; OE. *slæpan*, OHG. *slāffan*, MHG. *slāfen*, *to sleep* ; OE. *ūp*, OHG. MHG. *ūf*, *up*.

t > zz. OE. *etan*, OHG. *ëzzan*, MHG. *ëzzen*, *to eat* ; OE. *hātan*, OHG. *heizzan*, MHG. *heizen*, *to call* ; OE. *hwæt*, OHG. *hwaz*, MHG. *waz*, *what*. In a few cases the **z, zz** became **s** in MHG. before **t** or **st**, as pret. *saste* from *sazte* : *setzen*, *to set* ; *beste*, *best*, *leste*, *last* = OHG. *bezzisto*, *lezzisto*.

k > hh. OE. *ic*, OHG. *ih*, MHG. *ich*, *I* ; OE. *sprecan* (*specan*), OHG. *sprēhhan*, MHG. *sprēchen*, *to speak* ; OE. *tācen*, OHG. *zeihhan*, MHG. *zeichen*, *token*. This **ch** must not be confused with the MHG. **h, ch** which corresponded to Indo-Germanic **k** (= Germanic **h**), as *ziehen*, *to draw, lead*, pret. *zōch*, cp. Lat. *dūcō*, *I lead*, see § 34.

The double consonants were simplified in OHG. and MHG. according to § 32.

2. **p, t** initially, medially and finally after consonants (**l, m, n, r**), and when doubled, were shifted to the affricatae **pf** (also written **ph**), **tz** (generally written **zz** and **z**) = MHG. **pf** (**ph**), **tz** (**z**).

p > pf. OE. *pund*, OHG. MHG. *pfunt*, *pound* ; OE. *gelimpan*, OHG. *gilimpfan*, MHG. *gelimpfen*, *to be meet* ;

OE. *scieppan*, OHG. *skepfen*, MHG. *schepfen*, *to create*. The *pf* became *f* after *l* and *r* already in OHG., as *helfan*, MHG. *helfen*, OE. *helpan*, *to help*; *wërfan*, MHG. *wërfe*, OE. *weorpan*, *to throw*.

t > z. OE. *tunge*, OHG. *zunga*, MHG. *zunge*, *tongue*; OE. *heorte*, OHG. *hërza*, MHG. *hërze*, *heart*; OE. *sealt*, OHG. MHG. *salz*, *salt*; OE. *sittan*, OHG. *sizzen*, *sitzen*, MHG. *sitzen*, *to sit*; OE. *sceatt*, OHG. *scaz* (gen. *scazzes*, *scatzes*), MHG. *schaz* (gen. *schatzes*), *money*, *treasure*.

k, *kk* (written *ck*) remained unshifted (except in High Alemanic), as OE. *corn*, OHG. MHG. *korn*, *corn*; OE. *cnēo*, OHG. *kneo*, MHG. *knie*, *knee*; OE. *sincan*, OHG. *sinkan*, MHG. *sinken*, *to sink*, pret. *sanc*; OE. *þeccan*, OHG. MHG. *decken*, *to cover*.

§ 24. *þ* became *d*, and *þþ* became *tt*, as OE. *þorn*, OHG. MHG. *dorn*, *thorn*; OE. *brōþor*, OHG. MHG. *bruoder*, *brother*. OE. *smipþe*, OHG. *smitta*, MHG. *smitte*, *smithy*; OE. *mopþe*, late MHG. *motte*, *moth*.

§ 25. The voiced explosives *b*, *d*, *g*, and the voiced spirants *ḃ*, *ḡ* did not undergo the same universal shifting as the voiceless explosives. *ḃ*, *ḡ* became *b*, *g*. *b*, *g* remained, and *d* became *t*, as OE. *brōþor*, OHG. MHG. *bruoder*, *brother*; OE. *bēodan*, OHG. *biotān*, MHG. *bieten*, *to offer*; Goth. *giban* (= *giþan*), OHG. *gēban*, MHG. *gēben*, *to give*. OE. *dohtor*, OHG. MHG. *tohter*, *daughter*; OE. *bēodan*, OHG. *biotān*, MHG. *bieten*, *to offer*; OE. *dēad*, OHG. MHG. *tōt*, *dead*. OE. *gōd*, OHG. MHG. *guot*, *good*; OE. *fleoġan*, OHG. *fliogan*, MHG. *fliegen*, *to fly*.

§ 26. The double consonants *bb*, *dd*, *gg* = OHG. *pp* (*bb*), *tt*, *cc* (*gg*), and MHG. *pp* (*bb*), *tt*, *ck* (*gg*), as OE. *sibb*, OHG. *sippa* (*sibba*), MHG. *sippe* (*sibbe*), *relationship*; OE. *cribb*, OHG. *krippa* (*kribba*), MHG. *krippe* (*kribbe*), *crib*. OE. *biddan*, OHG. *bitten*, MHG. *bitten*,

later *biten*, to request; OE. *pridda*, OHG. *dritto*, MHG. *dritte*, later *drite*, *third*. OE. *brycg*, OHG. *brucca* (*brugga*), MHG. *brücke* (*brügge*), *bridge*. The fluctuation in the writing of *pp* and *bb*, *ck* and *gg* is merely orthographical, and does not represent a difference in pronunciation. Both pairs were used to express the lenes medially between vowels. For other examples see § 31.

§ 27. The summary of the consonantal changes in §§ 23-6 may be expressed as follows:—

WEST GERMANIC.

MHG.

p ; t ; k ; þ	= ff (f), pf ; zz (z), z ; ch ; d.
pp ; tt ; kk ; þþ	= pf ; tz (z) ; ck ; tt.
b (þ) ; d ; g (g)	= b ; t ; g.
bb ; dd ; gg	= pp (bb) ; tt ; ck (gg).

§ 28. The following sound-changes took place in primitive Germanic:—Every labial + *t* became *ft*; every guttural + *t* became *ht*; every dental + *t* became *ss*, which was simplified to *s* after long vowels. This explains the frequent interchange in MHG. between *pf*, *b* and *f*; between *k*, *g* and *h*; and between *zz*, *z* and *ss*, *s* in forms which are etymologically related.

pf, *b*—*f*. *schepfen*, to create: *geschafft*, creature; *gëben*, to give: *gift*, gift; *wëben*, to weave: English *weft*.

k, *g*—*h*. *würken*, to work: pret. *worhte*; *denken*, to think: pret. *dāhte*; *mugen* (*mügen*), to be able: pret. *mohte*; *bringen*, to bring: pret. *brāhte*.

zz, *z*—*ss*, *s*. *giezen*, to pour: *güsse*, inundation; *wizzen*, to know: pret. *wisse* (*wiste*): *wīs*, wise; *muoz*, must: pret. *muose* (*muoste*); *ëzzen*, to eat: *ās*, carrion. Preterites like *wiste*, *muoste* were formed after the analogy of preterites like *worhte*, *dāhte*, where the *t* was regular.

§ 29. The guttural nasal *ŋ* (written *n*) only occurred in

the combinations **nk** (**nc**) and **ng**. It disappeared before **h** (= prim. Germanic **χ**) in primitive Germanic with lengthening of a preceding short vowel, as **vāhen** from prim. Germanic ***fanχanan**, *to seize, catch*, beside p.p. **gevangen**; and similarly **hāhen**, *to hang*, p.p. **gehangen**; pret. **brāhte**, **dāhte**, **dūhte**, beside **bringen**, *to bring*, **denken**, *to think*, **dunken**, *to seem*.

The guttural nasal disappeared in an unstressed syllable when preceded by an **n** in a stressed syllable in the course of the OHG. and MHG. period, as OHG. **honag**, MHG. **honec**, beside OHG. **honang**, *honey*; OHG. **kunig**, MHG. **künec**, beside OHG. **kuning**, *king*; OHG. **pfennig**, MHG. **pfennic**, beside OHG. **pfenning**, MHG. **pfenninc**, *penny*. And similarly with dental **n**, as **senede** beside **senende**, *longing, yearning*.

§ 30. Strong verbs, which have a medial **v** (**f**), **d**, **h**, **s** in the present, have respectively **b**, **t**, **g** (**ng**), **r** in the second person sing. pret. indicative, the preterite plural indicative, the pret. subjunctive and the past participle. This interchange of consonants is called Verner's Law, see OHG. Primer, §§ 72, 87:—

	INF.	PRET. PL.	P.P.
v (f)— b .	heven , <i>to raise</i>	huoben	gehaben .
d — t .	mīden , <i>to avoid</i>	miten	gemiten .
	snīden , <i>to cut</i>	sniten	gesniten .
h — g .	dīhen , <i>to thrive</i>	digen	gedigen .
	ziehen , <i>to draw</i>	zugen	gezogen .
	slahen , <i>to strike</i>	sluogen	geslagen .
h — ng (§ 29).	hāhen , <i>to hang</i>	hiengen	gehangen .
	vāhen , <i>to catch</i>	viengen	gevangen .
s — r .	rīsen , <i>to fall</i>	rīrn	gerīrn .
	kiesen , <i>to choose</i>	kurn	gekorn .

This law has, however, many exceptions in MHG. owing to levelling having taken place with the infinitive,

present indicative and preterite singular, as **risen**, **gerisen** beside **rirn**, **gerirn**.

The same interchange of consonants exists between strong verbs and their corresponding causative weak verbs, as **liden**, *to go* : **leiten**, *to lead* ; **hāhen**, *to hang* : **hengen**, *to hang* (trans.) ; **ge-nēsen**, *to be saved* : **nern**, *to save* ; and in nouns, &c., as **hof** (gen. **hoves**), *court* : **hübesch**, *courtly* ; **tōt** (gen. **tōdes**), *death* : **tōt** (gen. **tōtes**), *dead* ; **swēher**, *father-in-law* : **swiger**, *mother-in-law* ; **hase** : English *hare*.

§ 31. The doubling of consonants took place under certain well-defined rules partly in prim. Germanic and partly in prim. West Germanic, see the Author's Hist. Germ. Grammar, §§ 202, 213-14. Examples of words which had double consonants in prim. Germanic are : **kopf**, *head* ; **napf** (OE. **hnæp**, gen. **hnæppes**), *basin* ; **boe** (OE. **bucca**), *buck*, gen. **bockes** ; **rinnen**, *to run* ; **swimmen**, *to swim* ; **vol** (gen. **volles**), *full* ; **vërre**, *far* ; **gewisser**, *certain*.

The chief cases in which double consonants arose in prim. West Germanic were :—

1. The assimilation of **bn**, **gn**, **pn** to **bb**, **gg**, **pp** = MHG. **pp**, **ck** (**gg**), **pf**, as **knappe** : **knabe**, *boy* ; **rappe** : **rabe**, *raven* ; **rocke**, **rogge**, *rye* ; **tropfe**, *drop* : **triefen**, *to drip*.

2. **p**, **t**, **k** were doubled before a following **r** or **l**. The doubling regularly took place in the inflected forms, and was then extended to the uninflected forms by levelling, as **apfel** (OE. **æppel**), *apple* ; **kupfer** (Lat. **cuprum**), *copper* ; **bitter** (Goth. **báitrs**), *bitter*, see § 23 note ; **lützel** (OS. **lutil**), *little* ; **acker** (Goth. **akrs**), *field* ; **wacker** (OE. **wæccer**), *watchful*. See § 23, 2.

3. All single consonants, except **r**, were doubled after a short vowel when there was originally a **j** in the next syllable. The **bb**, **dd**, **gg** ; **pp**, **tt**, **kk**, which thus arose, became **pp** (**bb**), **tt**, **ck** (**gg**) ; **pf**, **tz**, **ck** in MHG. (§§ 23, 2,

26), as *sippe* (*sibbe*), Goth. *sibja*, *relationship*; *bitten*, later *biten*, Goth. *bidjan*, *to request*; *tretten* (*wv.*): *trëten* (*sv.*), *to tread*; *brücke* (*brügge*), *bridge*; *ecke* (*egge*), *edge*; *mücke* (*mügge*), *midge*; *rücke* (*rügge*), *ridge, back*. *schepfen*, Goth. *skapjan*, *to create*; *hitze*, *heat*: *heiz*, *hot*; *netzen*, *to wet*: *naz*, *wet*; *setzen*, Goth. *satjan*, *to set*; *sitzen*, *to sit*: pret. *saz*, p.p. *gesëzzen*; *decken*, *to cover*: *dach*, *cover*; *lücke*, *gap*: *loch*, *hole*. *zellen*, later *zeln*, *to count*: *zal*, *number*. *vremmen*, later *vremen* (OE. *fremman*), *to perform*. *henne*, *hen*: *hane*, *cock*.

In MHG. the double consonants in verbs were often simplified through the levelling out of forms which regularly had a single consonant, e. g. regular forms were: *vremmen*, *to perform*, sing. *vremme*, *vremes(t)*, *vremet*, pl. *vremmen*, *vremmet*, *vremment*, pret. *vremete*, p.p. *gevremet*, then the stem-form with single *m* was levelled out into all the forms, and similarly with many other verbs, as *denen*, *to stretch*; *seln*, *to hand over*; *weln*, *to choose*; *wenen*, *to accustom*; *legen* beside *lecken* (*leggen*), *to lay*; and the strong verbs *biten*, *to beg*; *ligen* beside *licken* (*liggen*), *to lie down*.

§ 32. Double consonants were simplified:—

1. When they became final, as *boc*, *buck*, *kus*, *kiss*, *man*, *man*, *schif*, *ship*, *stum*, *dumb*, *vël*, *hide*, beside gen. *bockes*, *kusses*, *mannes*, *schiffes*, *stummes*, *vëlles*; pret. *maz*, *ran*, *traf*, beside *mëzzen*, *to measure*, *rinnen*, *to run*, *trëffen*, *to hit*.

2. Before other consonants, as pret. *dacte* (*dahte*), *nante* (*nande*), *kuste*, beside *decken*, *to cover*, *nennen*, *to name*, *küssen*, *to kiss*.

3. After consonants, as pret. *sante* (*sande*) from **santte*, *wante* (*wande*) from **wantte*, beside *senden*, *to send*, *wenden*, *to turn*.

4. After long vowels and diphthongs, as pret. sing. *leite* from **leitte*, pret. pl. *māzen*, *trāfen*, *vielen*, beside *leiten*,

to *lead*, *mëzzen*, to *measure*, *trëffen*, to *hit*, *vallen*, to *fall*. This simplification of double consonants took place during the OHG. period, as *slāfan*, to *sleep*, *heizan*, to *call*, *loufan*, to *run*, *zeichan*, *token*, beside older OHG. *slāffan*, *heizzan*, *louffan*, *zeihhan*.

§ 33. In MHG. the lenes *b*, *d*, *g* became the fortes *p*, *t*, *c* (*k*) when they ended a syllable, that is when they came to stand finally, or medially before a voiceless consonant. Traces of this law existed already in OHG. The interchange between the lenes and fortes includes two independent processes, viz. the change of the medial lenes *b*, *d*, *g* to the final fortes *p*, *t*, *k*, and the change of the final *f*, *s* to the medial intervocalic lenes *v* and to what is written *s* (cp. also NHG. *lesen*, *las*). It must be noted that in MHG. the interchanging pairs of consonants were all voiceless and that the difference merely consisted in the intensity or force with which the sounds were produced. This is quite different from NHG. where the interchange is between voiced and voiceless sounds except in the case of *f* which is voiceless in all positions in native words. Examples are: *gëben*, to *give*, *gelouben*, to *believe*, *wërben*, to *turn*, beside pret. *gap*, *geloupte*, *warp*; gen. *lîbes*, *lambes*, beside nom. *lîp*, *life*, *lamp*, *lamb*. *binden*, to *bind*, *wërden*, to *become*, beside pret. *bant*, *wart*; gen. *kindes*, *tōdes*, beside nom. *kint*, *child*, *tōt*, *death*. *biegen*, to *bend*, *singen*, to *sing*, *zeigen*, to *show*, beside pret. *bouc*, *sanc*, *zeicte*; gen. *tages*, *bërges*, beside nom. *tac*, *day*, *bërc*, *mountain*. *nëve*, *nephew*, beside *niftel*, *niece*; gen. *hoves*, *brieves*, beside nom. *hof*, *court*, *brief*, *letter*. *kiesen*, to *choose*, *lësen*, to *gather*, *lœsen*, to *loose*, beside pret. *kōs*, *las*, *lōste*; pl. *hiuser*, beside sing. *hūs*, *house*.

§ 34. Final *ch* after vowels interchanged with medial *h*, as *schuoch*, *shoe*, gen. *schuohes*; *höch*, *high*, gen. *hōhes*; *nāch*, *near*, adv. *nāhe*; pret. *geschach*, *sach*, beside *geschëhen*, to *happen*, *sëhen*, to *see*.

The medial combinations **lh**, **rh** were written **lch**, **rch** when they came to stand finally, as **bevêlhen**, *to confide*, pret. **bevalch**; gen. **schêlhes**, **twêrhes**, beside nom. **schêlch**, **twêrch**, *askew*, see § 19. **h** (= **ch**) and **ch** often disappeared in unstressed syllables and particles, as **êt**, *only*, **hînte**, **hînt**, *to-night*, **niet**, *not*, **dur**, *through*, beside **êht**, **hînaht**, **niht**, **nieht**, **durch**.

§ 35. Initial **j** became or was written **g** before a following **i**, as **gihet**, *he assures*, beside inf. **jêhen**, pret. **jach**, and similarly **jêsen**, *to ferment*, **jêten**, *to weed*. In the verba pura forms with and without the intervocalic glide **j** existed side by side in OHG. and MHG., as **blûejen** (OHG. **bluojen**) beside **blûen** (OHG. **bluoen**), *to bloom*; and similarly **dræjen**, *to twist*, **mûejen**, *to trouble*, **sæjen**, *to sow*, beside **dræn**, **mûen**, **sæn**. In a few words forms with and without intervocalic **j** (**g**) existed side by side, as gen. **blîges** beside nom. **blî**, *lead*; **eijer**, **eiger** beside **eier**, *eggs*; **frijen**, **frîgen** beside **frîen**, *to free*; **meige**, **meie**, *May*; **nerigen**, **nerjen** beside **nern**, *to save, rescue*; **swerigen**, **swerjen** beside **swern**, *to swear*; gen. **zwîges**, **zwîes**, nom. **zwî**, *twig*; gen. **zweiger**, **zweier**, *of two*.

§ 36. In OHG. **w** became vocalized to **o** when it came to stand at the end of a word or syllable, and then generally disappeared after long vowels, but the medial **w** regularly remained in OHG. and MHG. when it was at the beginning of a syllable, as **blā** (OHG. **blāo**, **blā**), *blue*, gen. **blāwes**; **snē** (OHG. **snēo**, **snē**), *snow*, gen. **snēwes**; **strō** (OHG. **strao**, **strō** by contraction), *straw*, gen. **strōwes**; **knie** (OHG. **kneo**), *knee*, gen. **kniwes**, OHG. **knēwes**; **schate** (OHG. **scato**), *shadow*, gen. **schat(e)wes**; pret. **blou**, **hiu**, **kou**, beside **bliuwen**, *to strike*, **houwen**, *to hew*, **kiuwen**, *to chew*; **fal** (OHG. **falo**), *fallow*, gen. **falwes**; **gar** (OHG. **garo**), *ready*, gen. **garwes**; **mël** (OHG. **mëlo**), *meal*, gen. **mëlwes**; **smër** (OHG. **smëro**),

/at; pret. **smirte**, **ströute**, beside **smirwen**, to *smear*, **ströuwen**, to *strew*. See § 9, 1.

The **w** element sometimes disappeared in the initial combinations **qua-**, **quā-**, **quē-**, **qui-**, **quī-** partly with and partly without influencing the quality of the following vowel, as pret. sing. **kam**, **kom** beside **quam**, *he came*, pret. pl. **kōmen**, **kāmen** beside **quāmen**; **kāle** beside **quāle**, *torture*; **kēc** beside **quēc**, *alive*; **korder**, **körder** beside **quërder**, *bait*; **komen**, **kōmen**, **kumen** beside **quēmen**, *to come*; pres. sing. **kume**, **küm(e)s(t)**, **kum(e)s(t)**, **küm(e)t**, **kum(e)t** = OHG. **quimu**, **quimis**, **quimit**; **kücken** beside **quicken**, *to enliven*; **kīt** beside **quīt** = **quidet**, *he says*.

§ 37. Medial **-ibe-**, **-ide-**, **-ige-** were sometimes contracted to **ī**; and medial **-age-**, **-ege-** to **ei**, as **gīst**, *thou givest*, **gīt**, *he gives*, beside **gibes(t)**, **gibet**; **quīst**, *thou sayest*, **quīt**, *he says*, beside **quides(t)**, **quidet**; **līst**, *thou liest down*, **līt**, *he lies down*, beside **liges(t)**, **liget**. **meit** beside **maget**, *maid*; **seist**, *thou sayest*, **seit**, *he says*, beside **sages(t)**, **saget**; **leist**, *thou layest*, **leit**, *he lays*, beside **leges(t)**, **leget**; **eislich** beside **egeslīch**, *terrible*; **gein** beside **gegen**, *against*.

§ 38. Intervocalic **h** often disappeared when the first vowel was long, and then the two vowels underwent contraction, as **hān**, *to hang*, **vān**, *to catch*, **vlēn**, *to implore*, **hō** (adv.), *high*, beside **hāhen**, **vāhen**, **vlēhen**, **hōhe**. Other contracted forms will be found in the Glossary.

§ 39. The final **r** disappeared after long vowels in monosyllables when the next word began with a consonant, but was often restored analogically, as **dā** (OHG. **dār**), *there*: **dārinne**, *therein*; **wā** (OHG. **wār**), *where*: **wārinne**, *wherein*; **hie** (OHG. **hiar**): **hierunder**, *hereunder*; adv. **mē** (OHG. **mēr**), *more*; **ē** (OHG. **ēr**), *formerly*; **sā** (OHG. **sār**), *at once*.

§ 40. Medial **t** (§ 25) became **d** after nasals in late OHG. and early MHG., as **senden**, *to send*, gen. **blindes** (nom. **blint**, *blind*), pret. **nande**, *he named*, **rūmde**, *he left*, beside early MHG. **senten**, **blintes**, **nante**, **rūmte**. It also occasionally became **d** after **l**, as **halden** beside **halten**, *to hold*, **solde** beside **solte**, pret. of **suln**, *shall*.

ACCIDENCE

CHAPTER III

DECLENSION OF NOUNS

§ 41. MHG. nouns have two numbers: singular and plural; three genders: masculine, feminine, and neuter, as in OHG. and NHG., from which the gender of nouns in MHG. does not materially differ; four cases: nominative, accusative, genitive, and dative. Traces of an old locative occur in what is called the uninflected dative singular of *hūs*, *house*, beside *hūse*, and in proper names like **Engellant** beside **Engellande**. The vocative is like the nominative.

In MHG., as in the older periods of the other Germanic languages, nouns are divided into two great classes, according as the stem originally ended in a vowel or a consonant, cp. the similar division of nouns in Latin and Greek. Nouns whose stems originally ended in a vowel belong to the vocalic or so-called strong declension. Those whose stems originally ended in *-n* belong to the so-called weak or *n*-declension. All other consonantal stems are generally put together under the general heading, 'Minor Declensions'. In OHG. nouns whose stems originally ended in a vowel are subdivided into the *a*-declension including pure *a*-stems, *ja*-stems, and *wa*-stems; the *ō*-declension including pure *ō*-stems, *jō*-stems, and *wō*-stems; the *ī*-declension, and the *u*-declension. All the nouns belonging to the *u*-declension went over into other

declensions in MHG. (cp. §§ 43, 44, 49). But as all final vowels either disappeared (some of them already in OHG.) or were weakened to *e* in MHG. (see §§ 7, 8), it is no longer practicable to retain the OHG. subdivision fully without entering into the oldest and in many cases into the prehistoric period of the language, which would be quite out of place in a MHG. grammar. The old 'Minor Declensions' had begun to pass over into the vocalic, especially into the *i*- and *a*-, declensions in the oldest OHG. The remnants of the old inflexions preserved in MHG. will be noted in the following paragraphs. The neuter nouns whose stems originally ended in *-os*, *-es* (cp. § 47) are in this Primer included in the strong declension.

A. THE VOCALIC OR STRONG DECLENSION.

I. Masculine Nouns.

§ 42. First declension.—To this declension belong all masculine nouns which form their plural in *-e* only. It includes: (a) the old masculine *a*-stems; (b) the old masculine *wa*-stems which lost their final *-w* after long vowels in OHG., as *sē*, *sea*, gen. *sēwes*, pl. *sēwe*, and similarly *bū*, *dwelling*, *rē* (also neuter), *corpse*, *snē*, *snow*, see § 36; and (c) the old masculine *i*-stems which could not have umlaut in the plural (§ 44).

SING.

Nom. Acc. <i>tac, day</i>	<i>kil, quill</i>	<i>engel, angel</i>
Gen. <i>tages</i>	<i>kil(e)s</i>	<i>engel(e)s</i>
Dat. <i>tage</i>	<i>kil(e)</i>	<i>engel(e)</i>

PLUR.

Nom. Acc. Gen. <i>tage</i>	<i>kil(e)</i>	<i>engel(e)</i>
Dat. <i>tagen</i>	<i>kil(e)n</i>	<i>engel(e)n</i>

On the interchange between fortis and lenis, as in **tac**, *day*, **lop**, *praise*, **sant**, *sand*, **hof**, *court*, gen. **tages**, **lobes**, **sandes**, **hoves**, see § 33.

Like **tac** are also declined the old consonantal stems **vīent**, *enemy*, and **vriunt**, *friend*, but pl. **vriunde** beside the old plural **vriunt**.

Like **kil** are declined all monosyllabic masculine nouns having a short stem-vowel and ending in **-l** or **-r** (§ 9, 1).

Like **engel** are declined masculine polysyllabic nouns ending in **-el**, **-em**, **-en**, **-er**, when their stem-syllable is long, as **mantel**, *mantle*, **ātem**, *breath*, **morgen**, *morning*, **acker**, *field*. Those in **-em**, **-en** generally retain the **e** in the dative plural. Polysyllabic nouns with short stem-syllables fluctuate between the retention or loss of the **e**, as gen. sing. **vogeles** or **vogels**, dat. sing. and nom. acc. pl. **vogele** or **vogel**, and similarly **vadem**, *thread*, **rēgen**, *rain*, **sumer**, *summer*, see § 9, 2.

§ 43. **Second declension.**—To this declension belong all masculine nouns whose nom. and acc. singular end in **-e**, which is the only difference between this and the first declension. It includes: (a) the old masculine **ja**-stems; (b) many old **u**-stems with short stem-syllable, as **fride** (OHG. *fridu*), *peace*, **sīte** (OHG. *situ*), *custom*, and similarly **huge**, *thought*, **mēte**, *mead*, **sige** beside *sic*, *victory*, **wite**, *wood* (see § 36); (c) the old short **i**-stem **wine**, *friend*; and (d) the old masculine **wa**-stem **schate** (gen. **schat(e)wes** beside **schates**), *shadow*.

	SING.	PLUR.
Nom. Acc.	hirte , <i>shepherd</i>	hirte
Gen.	hirtes	hirte
Dat.	hirte	hirten

§ 44. **Third declension.**—To this declension belong all masculine nouns which form their plural in **-e** and with

umlaut of the stem-vowel. It includes : (a) the old masculine *i*-stems ; (b) the old masculine *u*-stem **sun** (OHG. **sunu**, **sun**), *son* ; and (c) the two old consonant stems **fuoꝛ**, *foot*, **zant** (gen. **zandes**), *zan*, *tooth*.

	SING.		PLUR.	
	MHG.	OHG.	MHG.	OHG.
Nom. Acc.	gast	gast , <i>guest</i>	geste	gesti
Gen.	gastes	gastes	geste	gesteo , -io
Dat.	gaste	gaste	gesten	gestim

The singular of nouns of this declension was inflected like the *a*-stems (§ 42) already in OHG. And owing to the weakening of the case-endings of the plural in passing from OHG. to MHG. (§ 7), the only difference in the two declensions is the presence or absence of umlaut in the plural. The old masculine *i*-stems which could not have umlaut in the plural accordingly came to be inflected entirely like the old masculine *a*-stems, as **schrit**, *step*, **snit**, *cut*, **biz**, *bite*, pl. **schrite**, **snite**, **bizze**. A further consequence of the singular being inflected alike in both declensions is that the old *a*-stems began to have umlaut in the plural after the analogy of the *i*-stems, as **gedenke**, *thoughts*, **nägele**, *nails*, **wägene**, *wagons*, beside **gedanke**, *nagele*, *wagene*.

Nouns ending in the fortis *p*, *t*, *c*, or *f* (= Germanic *f*) regularly change the fortis to lenis in the inflected forms, as **korp**, *basket*, **walt**, *wood*, **slac**, *blow*, **brief**, *letter*, gen. **korbes**, **waldes**, **slages**, **brieves**.

§ 45. The old consonant stems **vater**, *father*, **bruoder**, *brother*, often remain uninflected in the singular, as gen. **vater**, **bruoder** beside **vaters**, **bruoders** (cp. § 9, 2). In the plural they take umlaut, as **veter**, **brüeder**. The old consonant stem **man**, *man*, is either declined like **tac** (§ 42) or remains uninflected throughout, as

	SING.	PLUR.
Nom. Acc.	man	manne, man
Gen.	mannes, man	manne, man
Dat.	manne, man	mannen, man

The nom. plural **man**, now written **mann**, is still preserved in counting, as **hundert mann**, *a hundred men*.

2. Neuter Nouns.

§ 46. **First Declension.**—To this declension belong all neuter nouns which have their nominative case singular and plural alike. It includes three different types of nouns: (a) The old neuter **a**-stems like **wort**, *word*, **venster**, *window*. (b) The old neuter **ja**-stems like **künne**, *race, generation*, **bette**, *bed*, **netze**, *net*. The characteristic of this type of noun is that it has umlaut in all forms of the singular and plural when the stem-vowel is capable of it (cp. § 31, 3). And (c) the old neuter **wa**-stems (cp. § 36) like **kníe**, *knee*, gen. **kniewes**.

	SING.			
Nom. Acc.	wort	venster	künne	kníe
Gen.	wortes	vensters	künnes	kniewes (knies)
Dat.	worte	venster	künne	kniewe (kníe)
	PLUR.			
Nom. Acc.	wort	venster	künne	kníe
Gen.	worte	venster	künne	kniewe (kníe)
Dat.	worten	venstern	künnen	kníewen (kníen)

(a) On the interchange between the fortes **p, t, c** and the lenes **b, d, g**, as in **grap**, *grave*, **gëlt**, *money*, **dinc**, *thing*, gen. **grabes**, **gëldes**, **dinges**, see § 33.

Like **venster** are declined the neuter polysyllabic nouns ending in **-el, -em, -en, -er**, as **luoder**, *bait*, **wāfen**, *wāpen*, *weapon*; **schapel**, *garland*, **gadem**, *house*, **wëter**, *weather*. On the endings, see §§ 9, 42.

(b) Like **künne** is also declined the old neuter **u-stem vihe** (OHG. **fihu**), *cattle*.

(c) Like **knie** are declined **mël**, *meal*, **rē** (also masc.), *corpse*, **smër**, *fat*, **strō**, *straw*, **tou**, *dew*, **wē**, *woe*, gen. **mëlwes**, **rēwes**, **smërwes**, **strōwes**, **touwes**, **wēwes**, see § 36.

§ 47. **Second declension.**—To this declension belong all neuter nouns which form their plural in **-er** and by umlaut of the stem-vowel when it is capable of it. This class of nouns corresponds to the Latin neuters in **-us**, as **genus**, gen. **generis**, pl. **genera**. The **-er** (OHG. **-ir**) was originally a stem-forming suffix which came to be regarded as a plural ending. In the oldest period of the language only about half-a-dozen nouns belonged to this class, but during the MHG. period nearly twenty neuter **a-stems** passed into this declension, and in NHG. the number has increased to about a hundred.

	SING.		PLUR.	
	MHG.	OHG.	MHG.	OHG.
Nom. Acc.	lamb	lamb , <i>lamb</i>	lember	lembir
Gen.	lambes	lambes	lember	lembiro
Dat.	lambe	lambe	lembern	lembirum

On the loss of the **e** in the gen. and dat. plural, see § 9, 2.

Other examples are: **ei** (pl. **eiger**, **eijer**, **eier**, § 35),

egg, huon, hen, kalp, calf, rat, wheel, rint, bullock, tal, dale.

3. Feminine Nouns.

§ 48. **First declension.**—To this declension belong all feminine nouns having their nominative case singular and plural alike. It includes : (a) the old feminine *ō*-stems, as *gēbe*, *gift*, *sēle*, *soul*, *zal*, *number*; (b) the old feminine *jō*-stems, as *kūneginne*, *kūnegin*, *kūnegīn*, *queen*, and similarly *vriundinne*, *friend*, *gūtinne*, *goddess*; (c) the old feminine *wō*-stems with and without *w*, as *brāwe*, *brā*, *brow*, pl. *brā* beside weak pl. *brāwen*; *diuwe*, *diu*, *servant*; (d) the old feminine abstract nouns in *-ī*, as *vinster* (OHG. *finstrī*), *darkness*, *schœne* (OHG. *scōnī*), *beauty*; and (e) the old consonant stem, *swester*, *swēster*, *sister*.

SING.

Nom. Acc.	<i>gēbe</i>	<i>zal</i>	<i>vinster</i>
Gen.	<i>gēbe</i>	<i>zal</i>	<i>vinster</i>
Dat.	<i>gēbe</i>	<i>zal</i>	<i>vinster</i>

PLUR.

Nom. Acc.	<i>gēbe</i>	<i>zal</i>	<i>vinster</i>
Gen.	<i>gēben</i>	<i>zaln</i>	<i>vinstern</i>
Dat.	<i>gēben</i>	<i>zaln</i>	<i>vinstern</i>

On the endings in nouns declined like *zal*, *number*, *dol*, *pain*, *wal*, *choice*, *nar*, *food*, *schar*, *flock*, and *vinster*, see § 9, 1, 2.

The gen. plural had the ending of the weak declension already in the oldest period of the language. Through the nom. singular and the gen. and dat. plural having the same endings as the feminine weak declension (§ 53), *ō*-stems began in OHG. to be inflected after the analogy

of the weak declension, especially in the plural. This process spread considerably in MHG. with concrete nouns, but not often with abstract nouns.

§ 49. **Second declension.**—To this declension belong all feminine nouns which form their plural in **-e** and have umlaut in the stem-vowel. It includes: (a) the old feminine **i**-stems; (b) the old **u**-stem **hant**, *hand*; and (c) several old consonantal stems, see below.

	SING.		PLUR.	
	MHG.	OHG.	MHG.	OHG.
Nom. Acc.	anst	anst , <i>favour</i>	enste	ensti
Gen.	enste or anst	ensti	enste	ensteo , -io
Dat.	enste or anst	ensti	ensten	enstim

In **jugent** (OHG. **jugund**, pl. **jugundi**), *youth*, gen. dat. **jugende** beside **jugent**, pl. **jugende**, the original **-i** being in the third syllable did not cause umlaut in the stem-syllable; and similarly **tugent**, *valour*.

hant, *hand*, originally belonged to the **u**-declension, which explains forms like gen. sing. and plural **hande** beside **hende**, dat. pl. **handen** beside **henden**. The old gen. plural has been preserved in NHG. **allerhand**, and the dat. plural in **abhanden**, **beihanden**, **vorhanden**, **zuhanden**.

Several old consonant stems went over partly or entirely into this declension, viz. **maget**, **meit** (§ 37), *maid*, pl. **mägede** or **meide**; **kuo**, *cow*, pl. **küje** or **küewe** (OHG. **kuoi**), **sū**, *sow*, pl. **siuwe** (OHG. **sūi**); both these nouns generally remained uninflected in the gen. and dat. singular. **naht**, *night*, has gen. and dat. singular **naht** beside **nächte**; pl. nom. acc. gen. **naht** beside **nächte**, dat. **nahten** beside **nächten**, cp. also NHG. **weihnachten**, MHG. **zën wihen nahten**. The MHG. adverbial gen. **nahts**, **dës nahtes**

was formed after the analogy of *dës tages*. Like *naht* were also inflected *brust*, *breast*, and *burc*, *citadel*.

muoter, *mother*, and *tohter*, *daughter*, remain uninflected in the singular. In the plural they have umlaut: *müeter*, *töhter*.

B. THE WEAK DECLENSION (N-STEMS).

§ 50. The weak declension contains a large number of masculine and feminine nouns, but only four neuter nouns, viz. *hërze*, *heart*, *ōre*, *ear*, *ouge*, *eye*, and *wange*, *cheek*; these nouns, especially *hërze*, sometimes form their nom. acc. plural after the analogy of nouns like *künne* (§ 46). The original case endings of the weak declension had disappeared in the oldest period of the language except in the nom. singular (masc. *-o*, fem. and neut. *-a*), the gen. pl. (*ōno*) and dat. pl. (*-ōm*). Owing to the weakening of the *-o*, *-a* to *-e* in MHG. the nom. singular became alike in all genders. And similarly the endings *-ōno*, *-ōm* and the endings of the other oblique forms were all weakened to *-en* in MHG. (§ 7), so that the element which originally formed part of the stem came to be regarded as a case ending.

On the loss of the final and medial *e* in nouns like *ar*, *eagle*, *bir* (fem.), *pear*, *gevangen(e)*, *prisoner*, beside the inflected forms *arn*, *birn*, *gevangen* from **gevangen-en* through the intermediate stage **gevangenn*, see § 9, I, 2.

§ 51.

I. Masculine Nouns.

	SING.	
	MHG.	OHG.
Nom.	<i>bote</i>	<i>boto</i> , <i>messenger</i>
Acc.	<i>boten</i>	<i>boton</i> , <i>-un</i>
Gen.	<i>boten</i>	<i>boten</i> , <i>-in</i>
Dat.	<i>boten</i>	<i>boten</i> , <i>-in</i>

PLUR.

Nom. Acc. boten	boton, -un
Gen. boten	botōno
Dat. boten	botōm

§ 52.

2. Neuter Nouns.

SING.

MHG.	OHG.
Nom. Acc. hërze	hërza, <i>heart</i>
Gen. hërzen	hërzen, -in
Dat. hërzen	hërzen, -in

PLUR.

Nom. Acc. hërzen	hërzun, -on
Gen. hërzen	hërzōno
Dat. hërzen	hërzōm

§ 53.

3. Feminine Nouns.

SING.

MHG.	OHG.
Nom. zunge	zunga, <i>tongue</i>
Acc. zungen	zungūn
Gen. zungen	zungūn
Dat. zungen	zungūn

PLUR.

Nom. Acc. zungen	zungūn
Gen. zungen	zungōno
Dat. zungen	zungōm

C. DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

§ 54. Names of persons ending in *e* in the nominative follow the weak declension. Masculine names of persons take *-es* in the genitive, *-e* in the dative, and *-en* in the accusative after the analogy of the strong adjectives. The accusative ending *-en* was sometimes extended to the

dative, and the dative ending *-e* to the accusative. And sometimes both these cases were without endings. Names of countries ending in *-lant* often have no ending in the dative, as **Engellant** beside **Engellande**, see § 41. Feminine names of persons ending in a consonant take *-e* in the genitive, dative and accusative, but occasionally remain uninflected throughout.

MASCULINE.

Nom. Sifrit	Hagene
Gen. Sifrides	Hagenen
Dat. Acc. Sifrit, Sifride(n)	Hagenen

FEMININE.

Nom. Kriemhilt	Uote
Gen. Dat. Acc. Kriemhilde, Kriemhilt	Uoten

CHAPTER IV

ADJECTIVES

A. THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

I. The Strong Declension.

§ 55. The MHG. adjectives are declined as strong or weak. They have three genders, and the same cases as nouns. The endings of the strong declension are partly nominal and partly pronominal. The nominal endings are: the accusative feminine singular, as **blinde** like **gēbe** (§ 48); and the genitive singular masculine and neuter, as **blindes** like **tages, wortes** (§§ 43, 46). All the other endings are pronominal. The so-called uninflected form of adjectives in the nom. singular masculine and feminine

and the nom. acc. neuter is a remnant of the time when adjectives and nouns were declined alike, see the Author's Hist. Germ. Grammar, §§ 399-400. The strong declension includes three different types of adjectives, all of which are declined alike: (a) The old **a**-stems, as **blint**, infl. form **blinter**, *blind*; **bar**, *bare*, **guot**, *good*, **heilec**, *holy*, **hol**, *hollow*, **michel**, *great*, **vinster**, *dark*, and similarly with a very large number of adjectives, including the past participles of strong and weak verbs. (b) The old **ja**-stems, as **lære** (OHG. *lāri*), infl. **lærer**, *empty*; **dünne**, *thin*, **enge**, *narrow*, **grüene**, *green*, **niuwe**, *new*, **reine**, *pure*, **schœne**, *beautiful*, **senfte**, *soft*, **wilde**, *wild*, and many others, including the present participles of strong and weak verbs. The **ja**-stems only differ from the **a**-stems in having **-e** in the uninflected form and umlaut in the stem-syllable when it is capable of it. (c) The old **wa**-stems, as **blā** (OHG. *blāo*, *blā*), infl. form **blāwer**, *blue*; **gar** (OHG. *garo*), infl. form **garwer** (see §§ 9, 1, 36), *ready*; **grā**, *grey*, **val**, *fallow*, **gël**, *yellow*, **kal**, *bald*, &c., all of which have **w** in the inflected forms.

The adjectival **i**- and **u**-stems had come to be declined like the **ja**-stems in the prehistoric period of the language, but a few remnants of such adjectives have survived in MHG. in forms without the final **-e** beside those with it, as **bereit**, *bereite*, *ready*, **dic**, *dicke*, *thick*, **gāch**, *gæhe*, *quick*, **grīs**, *grīse*, *old*, *grey*, **hēr**, *hēre*, *high*, *noble*, **rasch**, *resche*, *quick*, **rīch**, *rīche*, *noble*, **swār**, *swære*, *heavy*, **was**, *wasse*, *sharp*.

SING.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom.	blinder , <i>blind</i>	blindez	blindiu
Acc.	blinden	blindez	blinde
Gen.	blindes	blindes	blinder(e)
Dat.	blindem(e)	blindem(e)	blinder(e)

PLUR.

Nom. blinde	blindiu	blinde
Acc. blinde	blindiu	blinde
Gen. blinder(e)	blinder(e)	blinder(e)
Dat. blinden	blinden	blinden

On the loss of the *-e* in **blindem(e)**, **blinder(e)**, see § 9, 2. Umlaut caused by the *-iu* occurs in the nom. sing. feminine and nom. acc. pl. neuter of **al**, *all*, and **ander**, *other*, *second*, as **älliu**, **ändriu**. This rarely happens in other words.

SING.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom. micheler , <i>great</i>	michel(e)z	miceliu
Acc. michel(e)n	michel(e)z	michel(e)
Gen. michel(e)s	michel(e)s	michelre , micheler
Dat. michelme , michel(e)m	michelme , michel(e)m	michelre , micheler

PLUR.

Nom. michel(e)	miceliu	michel(e)
Acc. michel(e)	miceliu	michel(e)
Gen. michelre , micheler	michelre , micheler	michelre , micheler
Dat. michel(e)n	michel(e)n	michel(e)n

Like **michel** are inflected monosyllabic adjectives ending in *-l*, *-r* with a short stem-vowel, and polysyllabic adjectives ending in *-el*, *-en*, *-er*, as **bar**, *bare*, **hol**, *hollow*; **zwivel**, *doubtful*, **eigen**, *own*, **tougen**, *secret*, **ander**, *other*, *second*, **bitter**, *bitter*, **vinster**, *dark*; **ëben**, *even*, **übel**, *evil*, *bad*, &c. See § 9, 1, 2.

2. The Weak Declension.

§ 56. The weak declension of adjectives agrees exactly with that of the nouns.

SING.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom.	blinde , <i>blind</i>	blinde	blinde
Acc.	blinden	blinde	blinden
Gen.	blinden	blinden	blinden
Dat.	blinden	blinden	blinden

Plural **blinden** for all cases and genders.

B. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 57. The comparative was formed by means of the suffix **-er(e)** = OHG. **-iro**, **-ōro**, and the superlative by means of the suffix **-est(e)** = OHG. **-isto**, **-ōsto**. On the loss of the medial or final **e** in such forms as **tiurre**, *dearer*, **tiurste**; **minner**, *less*, **minnest**, **min(ne)ste**, see § 9, 3. Most monosyllables have umlaut in the comparative and superlative either exclusively or have mutated beside unmutated forms. The cause of these double forms is in a great measure due to the two OHG. double suffixes: comp. **-iro**, **-ōro** and superl. **-isto**, **-ōsto** having fallen together in **-er(e)** and **-est(e)** in MHG., as **elter**, *older*, **ermer**, *poorer*, **jünger**, *younger*, **grœzer**, *greater*, **hœher**, *higher*, beside **alter**, **armer**, **junger**, **grōzer**, **hōher**; superl. **eltest**, **ermest**, **jüngest**, **grœzest**, **hœhest**, beside **altest**, **armest**, **jungest**, **grōzest**, **hōhest**. Adjectives which have umlaut in the positive regularly preserve it in the comparative and superlative.

The comparative is declined weak, but the superlative is declined strong and weak.

§ 58. The following adjectives form their comparative and superlative from a different root than the positive :—

guot, *good*, bezzar, bezzest, beste (§ 23).

übel, *bad*, wirser, wirsest, wir(se)ste.

lützel, *little*, minner, minre (§ 9, 3), minnest, min-
(ne)ste.

michel, *great*, mērer, mēr(r)e, meiste.

§ 59. The following adjectives are defective :—

ērer, ērre, ërre, *former*, ērest, ērste, *first*.

hinder, hinder, hinderste, hindmost.

ober, *upper*, oberste, *uppermost*.

lezzeste, leste (§ 23), *last*.

vorder, *former*, vorderste, *foremost*.

C. FORMATION OF ADVERBS FROM ADJECTIVES.

§ 60. 1. By adding -e (= OHG. -o) to the adjective when this does not already end in -e, as *ëben*, *even*, *hōch*, *high*, *lanc*, *long*: adv. *ëbene*, *hōhe*, *lange*; *edele* (OHG. *edili*), *noble*, *übel* (OHG. *ubil*), *evil*: adv. *edele* (OHG. *edilo*), *übele* (OHG. *ubilo*).

2. Dissyllabic adjectives ending in *-e* and containing a mutated stem-vowel change it to the corresponding unmutated vowel, when used as adverbs, as **schœne** (OHG. **scōni**), *beautiful*, **herte**, *hard*, **senfte**, *soft*, **süeze**, *sweet*, **swære**, *heavy* : adv. **schōne**, **harte**, **sanfte**, **suoze**, **swäre**.

3. By adding **-liche** or **-lichen** to the adjective, as **ganz**, *whole*, **vlizec**, *diligent*: adv. **ganzliche(n)**, **vlizecliche(n)**.

4. The comparative and superlative degrees of adverbs are the same as the corresponding uninflected forms of the adjectives without umlaut :—

Adjective lanc, *long* lenger lengest.

Adverb	lange	langer	langest
--------	-------	--------	---------

(OHG. langōr) (OHG. langōst).

§ 61. The following are irregular :—

wol, well	baz, better	best(e), best.
	wirs, worse	wirdest, wirste, worst.
	min, minner, minre, less	minnest, minste, least.
	mē, mēr, mēre, more	meist, meiste, most.
	ē, formerly	ēr(e)st, ērste, first.

§ 62.

D. NUMERALS.

CARDINAL.

ein, -er, -ez, -iu, one
zwei, two
dri, three
vier, four
fünf (finf), five
sēhs, six
siben, seven
ahte, eight
niun, nine
zēhen, ten
einlif (eilif), eleven
zwelf, twelve
drizēhen, thirteen
vierzēhen, fourteen
fünzfēhen, fifteen
sēh(s)zēhen, sixteen
sibenzēhen, seventeen
ah(t)zēhen, eighteen
niunzēhen, nineteen
zweinzic (or -zec), twenty
drizic „ thirty
vierzic „ forty
fünzfzic „ fifty

ORDINAL.

ērste
ander
dritte
vierde
fünfte, finfte
sēhste
sibende, -te
ahtede, ahte
niunde, -te
zēhende, -te
ei(n)lifte, eilfte
zwelfte
drizēhende
vierzēhende
fünzfēhende
sēh(s)zēhende
sibenzēhende
ah(t)zēhende
niunzēhende
zweinzigste
drizigste
vierzigste
fünzigste

sëhszic (or -zec),	sixty	sëhszigeste
sibenzic	„ seventy	sibenzigeste
ah(t)zic	„ eighty	ah(t)zigeste
niunzic	„ ninety	niunzigeste
zëhenzic } or hundert }	hundred	{ zëhenzigeste or hundertste
zwei hunt } or hundert }	two hundred	zweihundertste
tüsent	thousand	tüsentste
zwei tüsent	two thousand	zweitüsentste

§ 63. **Ein** follows the strong declension, when used as a numeral. The dat. ^s**einme** is generally contracted to **eime** (§ 9, 3). When **ein** is used in the sense of *alone*, it follows the weak declension. On the inflexion of **ander**, *second*, see § 55. **Zwei** and **drī** are declined as follows:—

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom. Acc. zwēne	zwei	zwō, zwuo, zwā	
Gen. zwei(g)er (§ 35)	zwei(g)er	zwei(g)er	
Dat. zwein, zweien	zwein, zweien	zwein, zweien	
Nom. Acc. drī, drīe	driu	drī, drīe	
Gen. drī(g)er (§ 35)	drī(g)er	drī(g)er	
Dat. drīn, drīen	drīn, drīen	drīn, drīen	

§ 64. The other cardinals up to twelve are sometimes inflected; when such is the case the endings are:—

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. Acc.	-e	-iu
Gen.	-er	-er
Dat.	-en	-en

hundert and **tüsent** are neuter nouns.

CHAPTER V

PRONOUNS

I. PERSONAL.

§ 65.

SING.

Nom.	ich, <i>I</i>	du, <i>dū, thou</i>
Acc.	mich	dich
Gen.	mīn	dīn
Dat.	mir	dir

PLUR.

Nom.	wir	ir
Acc.	unsich, uns	iuch
Gen.	unser	iuwer
Dat.	uns	iu

SING.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom.	ēr, <i>he</i>	ëz, <i>it, there</i>	si, sī, siu, sie, <i>she</i>
Acc.	in	ëz	sie, si, sī
Gen.	(ës)	ës	ir(e)
Dat.	im(e)	im(e)	ir(e)

PLUR.

Nom. Acc.	si, sī, sie (Neut. also siu), <i>they</i>
Gen.	ir(e)
Dat.	in

NOTE.—1. The gen. *ir* is often used as a possessive pronoun. For *ëz* the form *iz* sometimes appears.

2. For the acc. pl. *unsich* the dat. *uns* is mostly used. *iu* is often used for *iuch*, and *vice versa*. *im*, *ir* are more usual than *ime*, *ire*.

3. The unstressed forms of personal pronouns are often

attached to other words, as *ichz*, *iz* = *ich өз*; *ichne*, *ine*, *ichn* = *ich ne* (*not*); *tuostu* = *tuost du*; *dune*, *dun* = *du ne* (*not*); *tuoz* = *tuo өз*; *eist*, *ēst* = *өз ist*; *deiz* = *daz өз*; *mohter* = *mohte өр*; *baten* = *bat in*; *wirz* = *wir өз*, &c.

§ 66.

2. REFLEXIVE.

	SING.	PLUR.
Acc.	<i>sich</i>	<i>sich</i>
Gen.	<i>sīn</i> (fem. <i>ir</i>)	<i>ir</i>
Dat.	<i>im</i> , <i>ir</i>	<i>in</i>

§ 67.

3. POSSESSIVE.

mīn, *my*; *dīn*, *thy*; *sīn*, *his*; *ir*, *her*; *unser*, *our*; *iuwer*, *your*; *ir*, *their*.

They are declined like the strong adjective *micHEL*, *great* (§ 55). The dat. sing. forms *dīnme*, *sīnme* are generally contracted to *dīme*, *sīme*, see § 9, 3.

§ 68.

4. DEMONSTRATIVE.

	SING.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom.	<i>dēr</i> , <i>the</i>	<i>daz</i>	<i>diu</i>
Acc.	<i>dēn</i>	<i>daz</i>	<i>die</i>
Gen.	<i>dēs</i>	<i>dēs</i>	<i>dēr(e)</i>
Dat.	<i>dēm(e)</i>	<i>dēm(e)</i>	<i>dēr(e)</i>
Instr.		<i>diu</i>	
	PLUR.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom.	<i>die</i>	<i>diu</i>	<i>die</i>
Acc.	<i>die</i>	<i>diu</i>	<i>die</i>
Gen.	<i>dēr(e)</i>	<i>dēr(e)</i>	<i>dēr(e)</i>
Dat.	<i>dēn</i>	<i>dēn</i>	<i>dēn</i>

Like *dër* is also declined *jener*, *that*, except that the Nom., Acc. sg. neut. ends in *-ez*. *dër*, &c., is used both as definite article and relative pronoun.

NOTE.—1. For the fem. nom. sing. and the neut. nom. acc. pl. *diu*, the form *die* was sometimes used; and conversely *diu* for *die* in the fem. acc. singular. *diu* and *die* were sometimes weakened to *de*, and to *d'* before words beginning with a vowel. *daz* was sometimes weakened to *dez*, and still further to *z* which was then attached to a preceding word, as *lāt^z kind* = *lāt daz kint*; *anz*, *inz* = *an*, *in daz*. *dēst*, *deis*, *dēs* = *daz ist*.

2. The various cases were often fused into one word with prepositions, as *anme*, *ame*, *am* = *an dēme*; *zēme*, *zēm* = *ze dēme*; *ūfme* = *ūf dēme*; *zēr* = *ze dër* (fem.); *übern* = *über dën*; *ūfën* = *ūf dën*; *zën* = *ze dën*.

SING.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom.	<i>dirre</i> (<i>diser</i> , <i>dise</i>), <i>this</i>	<i>ditze</i> , <i>diz</i> , <i>di^z</i>	<i>disiu</i>
Acc.	<i>disen</i>	<i>ditze</i> , <i>diz</i> , <i>di^z</i>	<i>dise</i>
Gen.	<i>dises</i>	<i>dises</i>	<i>dirre</i>
Dat.	<i>disem(e)</i>	<i>disem(e)</i>	<i>dirre</i>

PLUR.

Nom.	<i>dise</i>	<i>disiu</i>	<i>dise</i>
Acc.	<i>dise</i>	<i>disiu</i>	<i>dise</i>
Gen.	<i>dirre</i>	<i>dirre</i>	<i>dirre</i>
Dat.	<i>disen</i>	<i>disen</i>	<i>disen</i>

5. RELATIVE.

§ 69. A relative pronoun proper did not exist in the oldest periods of the Germanic languages, and accordingly the separate languages expressed it in various ways. In MHG. the following pronouns and adverbial particles were used to express it:—

1. **dër, daz** (also used as a conjunction), **diu**, also in combination with the particles **dar der dā**. 2. **sō, alsō** (alse, als), *as*; **sam** (alsam), *as*. 3. **dā(r)**, *where, dar, thither, whither, darinne, therein, dannen, wherefrom, darumbe, therefore, dō, when, as*. 4. Indefinite relatives, as **swër** (from **sō wër**), *whoever, swelch, each who, swëder, who of two*; **swā, swar**, *wherever, swannen, swanne* (swenne), *whenever, swie, however, howsoever*. 5. The conjunction **unde**, *and*.

6. INTERROGATIVE.

§ 70. The MHG. simple interrogative pronoun has no independent form for the feminine, and is declined in the singular only.

	<i>Masc. Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	wër, who	waz
Acc.	wën	waz
Gen.	wës	wës
Dat.	wëm(e)	wëm(e)
Instr.		wiu

In the same manner are declined the compounds :

swër (from **sō wër**), *whoever, etewër, eteswër, anyone, neizwër* (= *ne weiz wër, I do not know who*), *anyone*.

wëder, *who of two*, is declined like a strong adjective; **welich** (**welch**), *which*, is also declined like a strong adjective, but the nom. singular remains uninflected.

7. INDEFINITE.

§ 71. **ander**, *other*; **dechein, dehein, dekein**, *no, none*; **dewëder**, *neither*; **ein**, *one, some one*: when **ein** is used with the meaning *alone* it follows the weak declension; **etelich, etlich, eteslich, etslich**, *anyone, many a, pl. = some*; **etewër, eteswër**, *anyone*; **etewaz**, *anything*;

iegelich, **ieslich**, **iegeslich**, *each*; **ieman**, **iemen**, *someone, somebody*; **iewöder**, **ietwöder**, *each*; **iewelich**, **iewelich**, *each*; **iewiht**, **iht**, *anything*; **kein**, *no*; **man**, *one*; **manec**, *many a*, declined **maneger**, **manegez**, **manegiu**, &c.; **nehein**, *no, none*; **niht**, *nothing*; **solch**, *such*, declined like **manec**; **sum**, *any one at all*, pl. *some*; **sumelich**, **sumlich**, *many a*; **swelch**, *each who*; **swër**, *whoever*; **wöder**, *which of two*; **welich** (**welch**), *which*, declined like **manec**.

CHAPTER VI

VERBS

§ 72. The MHG. verb has the following independent forms:—one voice (active), two numbers, three persons, two tenses (present and preterite), two complete moods (indicative and subjunctive, the latter originally the optative), besides an imperative which is only used in the present tense; two verbal nouns (the present infinitive, and the gerund, generally called the inflected infinitive), a present participle with active meaning, and one verbal adjective (the past participle).

The MHG. verbs are divided into two great classes:—Strong and Weak. The strong verbs form their preterite (originally the perfect) and past participle by means of ablaut (§ 12). The weak verbs form their preterite by the addition of the syllable **-te**, and their past participle by means of a **t**-suffix. The strong verbs were originally further sub-divided into reduplicated and non-reduplicated verbs. The reduplication had, however, entirely disappeared in the oldest period of the language. The non-reduplicated verbs are divided into six classes according to the six ablaut-series (§ 12). The originally reduplicated verbs are put together here and called Class VII. Besides

these two great classes of strong and weak verbs, there are a few others which will be treated under the general heading *Minor Groups*.

A. STRONG VERBS.

§ 73. We are able to conjugate a MHG. strong verb when we know the four stems, as seen in (1) the infinitive or first pers. sing. of the present indicative, (2) the first or third pers. sing. of the preterite indicative, (3) the first pers. plural of the preterite indicative, (4) the past participle. The pret. subjunctive and the second pers. pret. indicative have the same stem-vowel as the pret. plural indicative.

§ 74. The conjugation of **nēmen**, OHG. **nēman**, *to take*, will serve as a model for all strong verbs.

Present.

		INDIC.		SUBJ.	
		MHG.	OHG.	MHG.	OHG.
Sing.	1.	nime	nimu	nēme	nēme
	2.	nimes(t)	nimis(t)	nēmes(t)	nēmēs(t)
	3.	nimet	nimit	nēme	nēme
Plur.	1.	nēmen	nēmēmēs, -ēm	nēmen	nēmēm
	2.	nēmet	nēmet	nēmet	nēmēt
	3.	nēment	nēmant	nēmen	nēmēn

		IMPER.		INFIN.	
		MHG.	OHG.	MHG.	OHG.
Sing.	2.	nim	nim	nēmen	nēman
Plur.	1.	nēmen	nēmēmēs, -ēm		
	2.	nēmet, (-ent)	nēmet		

		GERUND.	
		MHG.	OHG.
Gen.		nēmen(n)es	nēmannes
Dat.		nēmen(n)e	nēmanne

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.
nēmende nēmanti

Preterite.

INDIC.			SUBJ.	
	MHG.	OHG.	MHG.	OHG.
Sing.	1. nam	nam	næme	nāmi
	2. næme	nāmi	næmes(t)	nāmīs(t)
	3. nam	nam	næme	nāmi
Plur.	1. nāmen	nāmum	næmen	nāmīm
	2. nāmet	nāmut	næmet	nāmīt
	3. nāmen	nāmun	næmen	nāmīn

PAST PARTICIPLE.

MHG.	OHG.
genomen	ginoman

NOTE.—The *e* in the endings is regularly lost according to the rule given in § 9, 1, as sing. *stil*, *stilst*, *stilt*, inf. *stēln*, *to steal*; sing. *var*, *verst*, *vert*, inf. *varn*, *to go*. It was also frequently lost in the third pers. sing. pres. indicative of other verbs, as *vint* = *vindet*, *siht* = *sihet*, see § 9, 4 note. The *n* in the first pers. plural was sometimes dropped when the pronoun came after the verb, as *nēme wir* = *nēmen wir*.

The imperative singular sometimes has *-e* after the analogy of weak verbs (§ 90).

The OHG. forms given above show in what forms umlaut regularly took place, viz. in the second and third pers. singular of the pres. indicative, when possible, in the second pers. singular of the pret. indicative, and in the pret. subjunctive. The second pers. singular of the pret. indicative always has the same stem-vowel as the pret. subjunctive. On the absence of umlaut in the pret. subjunctive of certain types of verbs, see § 10, note. Forms without and with umlaut are found in the second and third pers. singular of the present in verbs belonging to Class VII, as *slāfes(t)*, *slāfet* beside *slæfes(t)*, *slæfet*.

Concerning the changes between *i*, *ë*; *u*, *o*; *iu*, *ie*; *ei*, *ē*; *ou*, *ō* in the various classes of strong verbs, see §§ 14–17.

THE CLASSIFICATION OF THE STRONG VERBS.

§ 75. We shall only give in each class a few verbs to illustrate the gradation of vowels and consonant changes. All other verbs occurring in the texts will be found in the Glossary referred to their proper class.

CLASS I.

§ 76. The verbs of this class belong to the first ablaut-series (§ 12) and therefore have *ī* in all forms of the present; *ei* in the first and third pers. sing. of the preterite, but *ē* before *ch* (= Germanic *h*, § 23), and finally (§ 17); and *i* in the preterite plural and past participle, thus:—

<i>bīten</i> , to wait	<i>beit</i>	<i>biten</i>	<i>gebiten</i>
<i>swīgen</i> , to be silent	<i>sweic</i>	<i>swigen</i>	<i>geswigen</i>
<i>trīben</i> , to drive	<i>treip</i>	<i>triben</i>	<i>getriben</i>

And similarly *belīben*, to remain, *bīzen*, to bite, *rīben*, to rub, *rīten*, to ride, *schīnen*, to shine, *schriben*, to write, *sīgen*, to sink, *strīten*, to quarrel.

<i>snīden</i> , to cut	<i>sneit</i>	<i>sniten</i>	<i>gesniten</i>
<i>dīhen</i> , to thrive	<i>dēch</i>	<i>digen</i>	<i>gedigen</i>
<i>rīsen</i> , to fall	<i>reis</i>	<i>rirn</i> (risen)	<i>gerirn</i> (gerisen)

And similarly *liden*, to suffer, *mīden*, to avoid, *nīden*, to envy, *līhen*, to lend, *zīhen*, to accuse. See § 30.

§ 77. The following two verbs which are also used as weak verbs have mixed forms in the preterite and past participle:—

<i>schrien</i> , to scream	<i>schrē</i>	<i>schriuwen</i>	<i>geschriuwen</i>
	<i>schrei</i>	<i>schrüwen</i>	<i>geschrüwen</i>
<i>spiwen</i> , to vomit		<i>schrirn</i>	<i>geschrirn</i>
	<i>spē</i>	<i>spiwen</i>	<i>gespiwen</i>
	<i>spei</i>	<i>spiuwen</i>	<i>gespiuwen</i>
		<i>spūwen</i>	<i>gespūwen</i>
		<i>spirn</i>	<i>gespirn</i>

CLASS II.

§ 78. The verbs of this class belong to the second ablaut-series (§ 12) and therefore have *ie* in the present, but *iu* in the present singular (§ 16); *ou* in the first and third pers. sing. of the preterite, but *ō* before *t*, *z*, *s* and *ch* (= Germanic *h*), § 18; *u* in the pret. plural; and *o* in the past participle, thus:—

biegen, to bend	biuge	bouc	bugen	gebogen
triefen, to drop	triufe	trouf	truffen	getroffen
bieten, to offer	biute	bōt	buten	geboten
schiezen, to shoot	schiuze	schōz	schuzzen	geschozzen

And similarly *klieben*, to cleave, *kriechen*, to creep, *liegen*, to lie, *riechen*, to smell, *schieben*, to shove, *vliegen*, to fly; *diezen*, to roar, *giezen*, to pour, *vliezen*, to flow.

sieden, to seethe	siude	sōt	suten	gesoten
ziehen, to draw	ziuhe	zōch	zugen	gezogen
kiesen, to choose	kiuse	kōs	kurn	gekorn

And similarly *vliehen*, to flee, *niesen*, to sneeze, *verliesen*, to lose, *vriesen*, to freeze. See § 30.

§ 79. On the stem-vowels in the following verbs, see § 16, note and § 36:—

bliuwen, to strike	bliuwe	blou	blūwen	
			bliuwen	gebliuwen
			blouwen	geblouwen

And similarly *briuwen*, to brew, *kiuwen*, to chew, *riuwen*, to pain.

§ 80. To this class also belong the three aorist presents:—

lūchen, to shut	liuche	louch	luchen	gelochen
	(lūche)			
sūfen, to gulp down	sūfe	souf	suffen	gesoffen
sūgen, to suck	sūge	souc	sugen	gesogen

CLASS III.

§ 81. The verbs of this class belong to the third ablaut-series (§ 12), and include the strong verbs having a medial nasal or a liquid + consonant. Those with nasal + consonant have *i* throughout the present tense and *u* in the past participle; the others have *i* in the present singular, *ë* in the plural, and *o* in the past participle (see §§ 14, 15), thus:—

binden, <i>to bind</i>	binde	bant	bunden	gebunden
rinnen, <i>to run</i>	rinne	ran	runnen	gerunnen
singen, <i>to sing</i>	singe	sanc	sungen	gesungen

And similarly *brinnen, to burn, dringen, to press, entringen, to escape, gelingen, to succeed, gewinnen, to gain, schrinden, to split, sinken, to sink, sinnen, to reflect, spinnen, to spin, schwimmen, to swim, trinken, to drink, vinden (p.p. vunden), to find, winden, to wind. beginnen, to begin, pret. sing. began beside begunde, begonde, pl. begunden, p.p. begonnen.*

bërgen, <i>to hide</i>	birge	barc	burgen	geborgen
hëlfen, <i>to help</i>	hilfe	half	hulfen	geholfen
stërben, <i>to die</i>	stirbe	starp	sturben	gestorben

And similarly *bevëlhen, to order, emphëlhen, enphëlhen, to recommend, gëlten, to pay, mëlken, to milk, schëlten, to revile, swëllen, to swell, verdërben, to destroy, wërffen, to throw, wërren, to confuse. wërden, to become, pret. pl. wurten, wurden, p.p. worten, (ge)worden, see § 30.*

CLASS IV.

§ 82. The verbs of this class belong to the fourth ablaut-series (§ 12). They include those strong verbs which have a liquid or a nasal before or after the stem-vowel, and a few others, thus:—

ë	i	a	ā	o
nēmen, <i>to take</i>	nime	nam	nāmen	genomen
bērn, <i>to bear</i>	bir (§ 9, 1)	bar	bāren	geborn
stēln, <i>to steal</i>	stil (§ 9, 1)	stal	stālen	gestoln
brēchen, <i>to break</i>	briche	brach	brāchen	gebrochen
vēhten, <i>to fight</i>	vihte	vaht	vāhten	gevohten

And similarly schērn, *to shear*, schrēcken, *to frighten*, sprēchen, *to speak*, vlēhten, *to plait*, zēmen (p.p. also gezēmen), *to be befitting*, stēchen, *to prick*, trēffen (p.p. troffen), *to hit*; dreschen, *to thrash*, leschen, *to be extinguished*, see § 11, 1. komen (OHG. quēman), *to come*, kume, quam, quāmen, komen; on other forms of this verb, see § 36.

CLASS V.

§ 83. The verbs of this class belong to the fifth ablaut-series (§ 12). They include the strong verbs containing a medial consonant other than a nasal or liquid, thus:—

ë	i	a	ā	ë
gēben, <i>to give</i>	gibe	gap	gāben	gegēben
jēhen, <i>to say</i>	gihe (§ 35)	jach	jāhen	gejēhen
sēhen, <i>to see</i>	sihe	sach	sāhen	gesēhen
wēgen, <i>to move</i>	wige	wac	wāgen	gewēgen

And similarly geschēhen, *to happen*, knēten, *to knead*, mēzzen, *to measure*, pflēgen, *to be accustomed*, trēten, *to tread*, vergēzzen, *to forget*, wēben, *to weave*.

wēsen, <i>to be</i>	wise	was	wāren	gewēsen
---------------------	------	-----	-------	---------

And similarly genēsen (pret. pl. also genāsen), *to recover*, jēsen, *to ferment*, lēsen (pret. pl. also lāsen), *to gather, read*. See § 30.

ēzzen, <i>to eat</i>	izze	āz(az)	āzen	gēzzen (§ 9, 7)
vrēzzen, <i>to devour</i>	vrizze	vrāz	vrāzen	vrēzzen

These verbs had a long vowel in the pret. singular in the oldest period of all the Germanic languages, cp. also Lat. *ēdī*.

§ 84. To this class also belong the three verbs:—

bit(t)en, <i>to beg</i>	bite	bat	bāten	gebēten
ligen, <i>to lie down</i>	lige	lac	lāgen	gelēgen
sitzen, <i>to sit</i>	sitze	saz	sāzen	gesēzzen

bit(t)en, OHG. bitten from *bidjan; ligen, OHG. ligen from *ligjan; sitzen, OHG. sitzen from *sitjan, see §§ 14, 31, 3. The inf. ligen is sometimes contracted to līn, see § 37.

CLASS VI.

§ 85. The verbs of this class belong to the sixth ablaut-series (§ 12), and accordingly have **a** in the present; **uo** in the pret. singular and plural; and **a** in the past participle. They have umlaut in the second and third pers. singular, as grebes(t), grebet; verst, vert. See § 10.

graben, <i>to dig</i>	gruop	gruoben	gegraben
tragen, <i>to carry</i>	truoc	truogen	getragen
maln, <i>to grind</i>	muol	muolen	gemaln
varn, <i>to go</i>	vuor	vuoren	gevarn

And similarly laden, *to load*, nagen, *to gnaw*, schaffen, *to create*, spanen, *to entice*, waschen, *to wash*, wahren, *to grow*, waten, *to wade*.

slahen, <i>to strike</i>	sluoc	sluogen	geslagen
twahen, <i>to wash</i>	twuoc	twuogen	getwagen

See § 30. The pret. sing. sluoc, twuoc for *sluoch, *twuoch were formed after the analogy of the pret. plural.

§ 86. To this class also belong:—

stān, stēn (§ 96), <i>to stand</i>	stuont	stuonden	gestanden
entseben (older ent-seven), <i>to perceive</i>	entsuop	entsuoben	entsaben
gewāhenen , <i>to mention</i>	gewuoc	gewuogen	gewagen
heben (older heven), <i>to raise</i>	huop	huoben	gehaben
swern (see § 35), <i>to swear</i>	swuor	swuoren	geswarn } gesworn }

The pret. singular **stuont**, **entsuop**, **gewuoc**, **huop** for ***stuot** (cp. Engl. **stood**), ***entsuof**, ***gewuoch**, ***huof** were formed after the analogy of the pret. plural. On the **b**, **g** in the pret. plural, see § 30. The last four verbs in the list originally had a **j** in the present, which accounts for the umlaut, cp. OHG. **heffen**, Goth. **hafjan**, *to raise*. **heben** had its **b** from forms where it was regular.

CLASS VII.

§ 87. To this class belong the verbs which originally had reduplicated preterites. The present and past participle have the same stem-vowel; and the preterite singular and plural have **ie**. In OHG. the verbs which had **a**, **ā** or **ei** in the present had **ia** (older **ea**, **ē**) in the preterite; and those which had **ou** (**ō**), **uo** in the present had **io** (older **eo**) in the preterite. But in MHG. the **ia** and **io** regularly fell together in **ie** (§ 11, 3), so that all the preterites had **ie**.

bannen , <i>to banish</i>	bien	bienen	gebannen
halten , <i>to hold</i>	hielt	hielten	gehalten
slāfen , <i>to sleep</i>	slief	sliefen	geslāfen
heizen , <i>to call</i>	hiez	hiezen	geheizten
loufen , <i>to run</i>	lief	liefen	geloufen
ruofen , <i>to call</i>	rief	riefen	geruofen

And similarly *halsen*, to embrace, *salzen*, to salt, *spalten*, to split, *spannen*, to span, *vallen*, to fall, *valten*, to fold, *wallen*, to bubble; *bāgen*, to quarrel, *blāsen*, to blow, *brāten*, to roast, *lāzen* (see also § 99), to let, leave, *rāten*, to advise; *meizen*, to cut, *scheiden*, to separate, *sweifen*, to rove; *bōzen*, to strike, *stōzen*, to push, *houwen* (pret. *hiu* and *hie*, pl. *hiuwen*, *hiewen*), to hew; *wuofen*, to bewail.

<i>gān</i> , <i>gēn</i> , to go	<i>gienc</i> (<i>gie</i>)	<i>giengen</i>	(<i>ge</i>) <i>gangen</i>
<i>hāhen</i> (§ 29)	}, to hang	<i>hienc</i> (<i>hie</i>)	<i>hiengen</i>
<i>hān</i> (§ 38)			
<i>vāhen</i> (§ 29)	}, to catch	<i>vienc</i> (<i>vie</i>)	<i>viengen</i>
<i>vān</i> (§ 38)			
<i>erren</i> , <i>ern</i> , to plough	<i>ier</i>	<i>ieren</i>	<i>gearn</i>

On the interchange between *h* and *ng*, see § 30; *erren*, *ern* from older **arjan*.

B. WEAK VERBS.

§ 88. The OHG. weak verbs were divided into three great classes according as the infinitive ended in *-en* from older **-jan*, *-ōn*, or *-ēn*.

The characteristic endings of the three OHG. classes were :—

Present.

	CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
Indic. sing.	<i>-u</i> , <i>-is(t)</i> , <i>-it</i>	<i>-ōn</i> , <i>-ōs(t)</i> , <i>-ōt</i>	<i>-ēn</i> , <i>-ēs(t)</i> , <i>-ēt</i>
„ plur.	<i>-ēn</i> , <i>-et</i> , <i>-ent</i>	<i>-ōn</i> , <i>-ōt</i> , <i>-ōnt</i>	<i>-ēn</i> , <i>-ēt</i> , <i>-ēnt</i>
Subj. sing.	<i>-e</i> , <i>-ēs(t)</i> , <i>-e</i>	<i>-o</i> , <i>-ōs(t)</i> , <i>-o</i>	<i>-e</i> , <i>-ēs(t)</i> , <i>-e</i>
„ plur.	<i>-ēn</i> , <i>-ēt</i> , <i>-ēn</i>	<i>-ōn</i> , <i>-ōt</i> , <i>-ōn</i>	<i>-ēn</i> , <i>-ēt</i> , <i>-ēn</i>
Imper. sing.	<i>-i</i>	<i>-o</i>	<i>-e</i>
plur.	<i>-ēn</i> , <i>-et</i>	<i>-ōn</i> , <i>-ōt</i>	<i>-ēn</i> , <i>-ēt</i>

Preterite.

	CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
Indic. sing.	-ta, -tōs(t), -ta -ita, -itōs(t), -ita }	-ōta, -ōtōs(t), -ōta	-ēta, -ētōs(t), -ēta
„ plur.	-tun, -tut, -tun -itun, -itut, -itun }	-ōtun, -ōtut, -ōtun	-ētun, -ētut, -ētun
Subj. sing.	-ti, -tīs(t), -ti -iti, -itīs(t), -iti }	-ōti, -ōtīs(t), -ōti	-ēti, -ētīs(t), -ēti
„ plur.	-tīn, -tīt, -tīn -itīn, -itīt, -itīn }	-ōtīn, -ōtīt, -ōtīn	-ētīn, -ētīt, -ētīn

Past Participle.

Uninfl. form	-it	-ōt	-ēt
Infl. „	-tēr } -itēr }	-ōtēr	-ētēr

Infinitive.

-en	-ōn	-ēn
------------	------------	------------

In OHG. the verbs of Class I were divided into two sub-divisions: (a) polysyllabic verbs and those containing an old long stem-syllable; (b) those which originally had a short stem-syllable (cp. § 31, 3). The former formed their preterite in **-ta**, and the latter in **-ita**; and similarly in the inflected form of the past participle. In MHG. all the unaccented vowels **i, e, a, o, u, ī, ē, ō** regularly fell together in **e** (§ 7), so that the old distinction between the endings of the three classes of verbs was to a great extent obliterated. The OHG. verbs with a short stem-syllable belonging to Classes II and III came in MHG. to be inflected entirely like sub-division (b) of Class I; and those with a long stem-syllable mostly came to be inflected like sub-division (a) of Class I, see §§ 9, 2, 92.

Owing to all the OHG. unaccented vowels being weakened to **e** the MHG. endings are:—

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. Indic.:	-e, -es(t), -et	-en, -et, -ent
„ Subj.:	-e, -es(t), -e	-en, -et, -en
Pret. Indic. }	-te, -tes(t), -te }	-ten, -tet, -ten }
and Subj.:	-ete, -etes(t) -ete }	-eten, -etet, -eten }
Imper.	-e	-en, -et
P.P. Uninfl. form	-et	
Infl. „	-ter }	
	-eter }	
Infin.	-en.	

Final **-n** in the first pers. sing. of the pres. indicative of the old Classes II and III remained in early MHG., but during the MHG. period the first person was remodelled after the analogy of Class I.

NOTE.—Old forms with **ō** (**u**) for later **e** occasionally occur in verbs originally belonging to the OHG. Class II; and in like manner **ī** for **e** in the pret. subjunctive.

§ 89. The MHG. weak verbs are divided into two classes, according as the preterite is formed in **-te** or **-ete** (see however § 40). The inflexion of the present is the same in both classes.

CLASS I.

§ 90. To this class belong (1) verbs which have old long stem-syllables. Those having a mutated vowel in the present have the corresponding unmutated vowel in the preterite. The **i** which would have caused umlaut in the preterite disappeared in the prehistoric period of the language. The past participle generally has two forms: one with a mutated vowel, and the other without it, properly from the old inflected form which did not have umlaut. (2) Verbs having a short stem-vowel followed by a single

consonant (**l**, **r**), and trisyllabic verbs containing an **l**, **n**, or **r** in the second syllable, as **zeln**, older **zellen** (§ 31, 3), *to count*, pret. **zelte** beside **zalte**, p.p. **gezelt** beside **gezalt**; **nern**, *to rescue*, pret. **nerte** (OHG. *nerita*), p.p. **genert**; and similarly **doln** (OHG. *dolōn*), *to tolerate*, **seln**, *to hand over*, **spiln**, *to play*, **weln**, *to choose*; **wern**, *to defend*; **wandeln** (OHG. *wantalōn*), *to change*, pret. **wandelte**; **vordern** (OHG. *fordarōn*), *to further*, pret. **vorderte**; **sĕgenen** (OHG. *sĕganōn*), *to bless*, pret. **sĕgente**. See §§ 9, 1, 2, 92.

Present.

	INDIC.	SUBJ.	IMPER.
Sing. 1.	kenne	kenne	
2.	kennes(t)	kennes(t)	kenne
3.	kennet	kenne	
Plur. 1.	kennen	kennen	kennen
2.	kennet	kennet	kennet, (-ent)
3.	kennent	kennen	

Preterite.

Sing. 1.	kante	kante
2.	kantes(t)	kantes(t)
3.	kante	kante
Plur. 1.	kanten	kanten
2.	kantet	kantet
3.	kanten	kanten

Infin. **kennen**, *to know*; Pres. Part. **kennende**; Past Part. **gekennet**, **gekant**.

And similarly with a large number of verbs, as **blüemen**, *to bloom*, **brennen**, *to burn*, **fŭllen**, *to fill*, **grüezen**, *to greet*, **hœren**, *to hear*, **kŭssen**, *to kiss*, **lœsen**, *to loose*, **nennen**, *to name*, **rennen**, *to run*, **senden** (pret. **sante**), *to send*, **senken**, *to sink*, **setzen** (pret. **satte**, **sazte**, p.p. **gesat**, **gesatz**,

gesetzt), to set, **stellen**, to place, **süezen**, to sweeten, **vellen**, to fell, **wānen**, to fancy, **wünschen**, to wish; **gelouben**, to believe, **kēren**, to turn, **koufen**, to buy, **leiten** (pret. **leite**), to lead, **ougen**, to show, **suochen**, to seek. The *verba pura* have double forms in the present and preterite, as **dræjen**, **dræn** (§ 35), to turn, pret. **drāte** beside the new formation **dræjete**, **dræte**, and similarly **blüejen**, to bloom, **müejen**, to trouble, **rüejēn**, to row, **sæjen**, to sow, **wæjen**, to blow. Verbs with medial **ck** have double preterites, as **decken**, to cover, pret. **dacte** beside **dahte**, and similarly **drücken**, **drucken**, to press, **smecken**, to taste, **wecken**, to awake. See also § 92.

§ 91. The following are irregular :—

<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Pret.</i>	<i>P. P.</i>
denken , to think	dāhte	gedāht (§§ 28, 29)
dunken , dünken , to seem	dūhte	gedūht (§§ 28, 29)
furhten , fürhten , to fear	vorhte	gevorht
wurken , würken , to work	worhte	geworht
bringen , to bring	brāhte	gebrāht (§§ 28, 29)

NOTE.—The second pers. sing. of **brāhte** is **bræhte** or **brāhtes(t)**, pret. subj. **bræhte**; and similarly with **dāhte**; the subj. of **dūhte** is **dūhte** or **diuhte**.

CLASS II.

§ 92. The verbs belonging to this class form their preterite in **-ete** and their past participle in **-et**. In other respects Class II has the same endings as Class I.

It includes: (a) The dissyllabic verbs, having a short stem-vowel followed by a single consonant other than **l**, **r**, which in OHG. belonged to Classes II and III, as **loben** (OHG. **lobōn**), to praise, pret. **lobete**, p.p. **gelobet**; **leben** (OHG. **lēbēn**), to live, pret. **lēbete**, p.p. **gelēbet** (see § 88). (b) The dissyllabic verbs of OHG. Class I with a short

stem-vowel followed by double consonants other than **ll** (see § 31, 3), as **legen**, older **leggen** (OHG. **leggen**), *to lay*, pret. **legete** or **leite** (§ 37), p.p. **geleget** or **geleit**; **denen**, older **dennen** (OHG. **dennen**), *to stretch*, pret. **denete**, p.p. **gedenet**.

Other examples belonging to Class II are: **bëten**, *to pray*, **dagen**, *to be silent*, **klagen**, *to complain*, **klëben**, *to stick*, **laden**, *to invite*, **namen**, *to name*, **sagen**, *to say*, pret. **sagete** and **seite** (§ 37).

The verbs with a long stem-syllable, which belonged to OHG. Classes II and III, went over in MHG. either into Class I (1), see § 90, or had preterites in **-te** beside **-ete**, as **danken**, *to thank*, pret. **dancete** beside **dankete**, p.p. **gedanct** beside **gedanket**; **vrāgen**, *to ask*, pret. **vrāgte** beside **vrāgete**, p.p. **gevrāgt** beside **gevrāget**, and similarly **ahten**, *to observe*, **minnen**, *to love*, **trahten**, *to strive*, &c., see §§ 9, 2, 90; **dienen**, *to serve*, pret. **diende** (§ 40), &c.

C. MINOR GROUPS.

1. Preterite-Presents.

§ 93. These have strong preterites with a present meaning, from which new weak preterites have been formed. The 2nd pers. sg. ends in **-t**, and has the same stem-vowel as the 1st and 3rd pers. sg. The following verbs belong to this class:—

weiz, *I know*, 2nd pers. sg. **weist**; pl. **wizzen**; inf. **wizzen**; pres. p. **wizzende**; pret. **wisse**, **wesse**, **wiste** or **weste**; p.p. **gewist** or **gewest**.

touc, *I am of use*, inf. and pl. **tugen** or **tügen**; pret. **tohte**; subj. **töhte**.

gan, *I grant*, 2nd pers. sg. **ganst**; inf. and pl. **gunnen** or **günnen**; pret. **gunde**; subj. **gunde** or **günde**; p.p. **gegunnen**, **gegunnet**, or **gegunst**.

kan, *I know*, 2nd pers. sg. **kanst** ; inf. and pl. **kunnen** or **künnen** ; pret. **kunde** (**konde**) ; subj. **kunde** or **künde**.

darf, *I need*, 2nd pers. sg. **darft** ; pl. **durfen** or **dürfen** ; pret. **dorfte** ; subj. **dörfte** ; infin. and p.p. only in **bedürfen**, **bedorft**.

tar, *I dare, venture*, 2nd pers. sg. **tarst** ; inf. and pl. **turren** or **türren** ; pret. **torste** ; subj. **törste**.

sol, *I shall*, 2nd pers. sg. **solt** ; inf. and pl. **suln** or **süln** ; pret. **solde** or **solte**.

mac, *I can*, 2nd pers. sg. **maht** ; pl. **magen**, **megen**, **mugen**, or **mügen** ; pret. **mahte** or **mohte** ; subj. **mehte** (**mahte**) or **möhte**.

muoz, *I must*, 2nd pers. sg. **muost** ; pl. **müezen** ; pret. **muoste** or **muose** ; subj. **müeste** or **müese**.

2. Anomalous Verbs.

§ 94.

(1) **tuon**, *to do*.

Present.

	INDIC.	SUBJ.
Sing.	tuon (tu)	tuo
	tuos (t)	tuos (t)
	tuot	tuo
Plur.	tuon	tuon
	tuot (tuont)	tuot
	tuont	tuon

INFIN. **tuon**

IMPER. **tuo**

PRES.P. **tuonde**

Preterite.

Sing.	täte (tët)	täte (täte)
	tæte	tætes (t)
	täte (tët)	tæte
Plur.	täten (tæten , tëten)	tæten

P.P. **getān**

§ 95.

(2) *gān, to go.**Present.*

	INDIC.	SUBJ.
Sing.	{ <i>gān, gēn</i>	<i>gē (gā, gange)</i>
	{ <i>gās(t), gēs(t)</i>	<i>gēs(t) (gās(t), ganges(t))</i>
	{ <i>gāt, gēt</i>	<i>gē (gā, gange)</i>
Plur.	<i>gān, gēn</i>	<i>gēn (gān, gangēn)</i>
INFIN. <i>gān, gēn</i>		
IMPER. <i>ganc, genc, ginc (gā, gē)</i>		
PRES.P. <i>gānde, gēnde</i>		

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>gienc or gie</i>
Plur.	<i>giengen</i>
P.P.	<i>(ge)gangen or gegān</i>

§ 96.

(3) *stān, to stand.**Present.*

	INDIC.	SUBJ.
Sing.	{ <i>stān, stēn, stā, stē</i>	<i>stā, stē (stande),</i>
	{ <i>stās(t), stēs(t)</i>	<i>&c.</i>
	{ <i>stāt, stēt</i>	
Plur.	<i>stān, stēn</i>	

INFIN. *stān, stēn*IMPER. *stā, stē, stant**Preterite.**stuont*P.P. *gestanden or gestān*

§ 97.

(4) *sīn, wēsen, to be.**Present.*

	INDIC.	SUBJ.
Sing.	bin	sī (sīge, sīe)
	bis(t)	sīs(t) (sīges(t), sīes(t))
	ist	sī (sīge, sīe)
Plur.	birn, sīn	sīn (sīgen, sīen)
	birt, sīt	sīt (sīget, sīet)
	sint	sīn (sīgen, sīen)

INFIN. *sīn, wēsen.*Indic. Pret. Sing. *was* ; pl. *wāren* (§ 30)Subj. „ „ *wære* ; pl. *wāren*P.P. *gewēsen* (*gewēset*)(5) *wellen, to will.*

§ 98.

Present.

	INDIC.	SUBJ.
Sing. I.	wil	welle
	2. wil, wilt	welles(t)
	3. wil	welle
Plur. I.	wellen, weln	wellen
	2. wellet, welt	wellet
	3. wellen, weln	wellen
Pret.	wolte <i>or</i> wolde (§ 40)	wolte <i>or</i> wölte
Infin.	wellen.	

3. Contracted Verbs.

§ 99.

(1) *lān = lāzen, to let, leave.*Pres. Sing. *lān, lās(t), læs(t), lāt* (læt)„ Plur. *lān, lāt, lān*Pret. *lie or liez* (§ 87).Imper. *lā, lāt*Infin. *lān.* P.P. (*ge*)*lān*

(2) **hān** = *haben, to have.*

Pres. Sing. **hān, hās(t), hāt**

„ Plur. **hān, hāt, hān**

Pret. **hāte (hēte, hēt(e), hiet(e), hæte), hātes(t), &c.**

Subj. pres. **habe, habes(t), &c.**

„ pret. **hæte, hete, hēte, hiete, hatte, &c.**

Infin. **hān. P.P. gehabet, gehapt, gehāt.**

The contracted form **hān, &c.**, is mostly used as an auxiliary.

CHAPTER VII

SYNTAX

CASES.

§ 100. **Accusative.** The accusative has much the same function as in NHG. It is sometimes used, however, where the dat. or a preposition would be required in NHG. :—**ēr vuor wazzer unde wēge, he went by water and land.** The acc. is used after **wol, well**, when used as an interjection, as **wol mich**. A double accusative is required not only after **lēren, to teach**, but also after **hēln, verhēln, to conceal, verdagen, verswigen, to keep secret.**

§ 101. **Dative.** **ruofen, to call**, and **schirmen, to protect**, take the dative. The dative is often used adverbially: **allenthalben, on all sides, wīlen(t), formerly, &c.**

§ 102. **Genitive.** The genitives **hande, slahte, leie** = *manner* are used adverbially: **maneger hande, slahte, or leie, in many ways, manifoldly.**

The gen. is used in combination with the comparative of adjectives, as **dicker eines dūmes, thicker by the breadth of a thumb.** Indefinite and interrogative pronouns, used

substantively, take the genitive: **iemen armer liute**, *any poor people*; **niht schœneres**, *nothing more beautiful*; **dës enmac niht sîn**, *that cannot be*; **waz mannes êr wære**, *what kind of man he was*. In the same manner the rel. **swaz** may take the genitive: **swaz man vant dër armen**, *whatever poor people one found*.

The genitive may be used predicatively:—**sît sî dës goteshûses sint**, *since they belong to the house of God*; **diu sorge ist mîn eines niht**, *I am not the only one who has sorrow*.

Impersonal verbs often take the genitive: **mich genüaget dës**, *that is enough for me*; **mich gezimt dës**, *that pleases me*.

The genitives **dës** and **wës** may be used adverbially in the sense of *therefore, wherefore*; and likewise many nouns: **tages**, *by day*; **dës sëlben tages**, *the same day*; **nahtes**, *by night*.

Interjections usually take the genitive: **owē mir mînes leides!** *alas! for my grief*. **vil**, *much, many*; **mē(re)**, *more*; **wēnic**, *lützel*, *little*; **minner**, *minre*, *less*; and **genuoc**, *enough*, used as indeclinable substantives, are followed by the genitive. Cardinal numerals, used substantively, are also followed by the genitive: **zweinzec starker man**, *twenty strong men*.

ADJECTIVES.

§ 103. The weak and strong forms are used in the same manner as in Mod. HG. **dirre**, *this*, is followed by the weak or strong form; **aller**, *all*, usually by the strong. The strong or weak form can be used after pronouns, as **ich armer** or **ich arme**, *I poor*... In the vocative the weak form without the article is used, as **guoten liute**, (*ye*) *good people*. When the same adjective refers to nouns of different gender, it is put in the neuter plural.

ein and the possessive pronouns are followed by the

strong form in the Nom. and Acc. singular ; by the strong or weak form in the pl. and Gen. and Dative singular.

The possessive pronouns are declined strong.

The uninflected form of the adjective is used side by side with the inflected in the Nom. singular, all genders, and Acc. singular neuter, when the adjective comes before the noun: **ein guot man**, *a good man*. When the adjective stands after the noun the uninflected form may be used without reference to number, gender, or case. **ein, dehein**, and the possessive pronouns have the uninflected form in the Nom. for all genders, and Acc. neuter. The uninflected form of **al**, *all*, can be used before all forms of the definite article: **in al dër wërlte**, *in all the world*. See § 55.

PRONOUNS.

§ 104. **im**, **ir**, pl. **in**, are used to express the dative of the reflexive pronoun. **dër** is sometimes used pleonastically, as **dër brunne**, **dër was küele**, *the spring was cool*. **man** used as an indefinite pronoun can take the definite article along with it.

VERBS.

§ 105. **Number**. The verb can be used in the singular after a compound subject, as **Volkēr und Hagene sō sēre wüeten began**, . . . *began to rage so furiously*.

§ 106. **Tenses**. The fut. simple is expressed by **sol**, **muoz**, **wil** and the infin., or simply by the pres., as in OE.: **ich sol gān**, *I shall go*; **bin ich gnislich**, **sō genise ich**, *if I am curable, I shall recover*. For the fut. pf. the pf. is used: **daz ist schiere getān**, *that will soon have been done*. The pf. is expressed either by the simple pret. or the p.p. and the verbs **hān**, **sīn**; in subordinate sentences the pret. often has the meaning of the pluperfect: **dō du**

von ir schiede, zehant sie starp, *she died immediately after thou hadst taken leave of her.*

The preterite acquires a pluperfect, and the present a future perfect meaning when the prefix **ge** is added to them: **swenne iuwer sun gewahset**, *when your son (shall have) has grown up*; **dō ich in gesach**, *when I had seen him*. The present participle with **sīn** is sometimes used as in English, see 'Arme Heinrich,' l. 24.

§ 107. **Voice.** The present and preterite passivē are expressed by **wērden** and the p.p., and the corresponding perfect tenses by **sīn** and the p.p.

Pres. **ich werde gelobet.**

Pret. **ich wart** „

Perf. **ich bin** „

Plupf. **ich was** „

Inf. **gelobet sīn.**

§ 108. **Negation.** Negation in sentences is expressed by **ne** (en, n) before the verb, and **niht** after it: **ēr enist guot**, *he is not good*. **niht** is frequently omitted, especially after the preterite presents, the verbs **wellen**, **lān**, sentences containing negative pronouns or adverbs, and in subordinate sentences.

en without **niht** is used with the subjunctive in subordinate sentences in the sense of *unless, if not, except that, when that, that not, &c.*: **dēn līp wil ich verliesen, si enwērde mīn wīp**, *I will die if she will not become my wife*; **ich wāne nieman in dēr wērldē lēbe, ērn habe ein leit**, *I believe no one lives in the world who has not his trouble*.

en is further also used in the sense of Latin 'quin': **ich mac daz niht bevarn, mīrn wērde mīn ritterschaft benomen**, *I cannot prevent my knighthood being taken away from me*.

texts
TEXTS

I

BERTHOLD VON REGENSBURG.

His name was properly Berthold Lech. He was the most celebrated preacher of the thirteenth century. He died in Regensburg in 1272. The following extract is from a sermon on Matt. v. 8.

‘Sælic sint die armen: wan daz himelrîch ist ir,’ etc. Mit disen aht tugenden sint alle die ze himelrîche kômen, die dā sint, und mit den selben aht tugenden mûezent noch alle die dar kômen, die iemer mēr dar kômen sîln. Nū wil ich die sibē under wegen lān und wil niuwen von ir einer sagen, wan alse vil guoter dinge an ir ieglicher ist; und von ir ieglicher wære gar vil und gar lanc sūnderlichen ze sagenne; und wie manigiu untugent uns an disen ahte tugenden irret, daz wūde eht von ieglicher gar lanc ze sagenne. Wan man ez allez in einer predigen niht verenden mac, noch in vieren, noch in zehenen, sō wil ich iu hiute niuwen sagen von den, die ein reine herze habent, und von den man hiute dā liset in dem heiligen ewangelio ‘sælic sint, die reines herzen sint: die werdent got sehende.’ Die sint wol von rehte sælic, die dā got sehent. Ein übergūlde ist ez aller der sælikeit, diu ie wart oder iemer mēr eht werden mac, swer got ansehende eht wirt, alsō sūze und alsō wūnneclîch ist diu gesiht, die man an got siht. Sō wart nie deheiner muoter ir kint nie sō liep, ān unser frouwen, und solte si ez drīe tage ane sehen ān underlāz, daz si anders niht enpflege, wan eht si ir liebez kint solte an sehen: si æze an dem vierden tage vil gerner ein stücke brōtes. Und wolte ich vil gerner, daz

ich alsō ein guot mensche wære, als daz wār ist, daz ich iezuo
 reden wil. Ob daz alsō wære, daz man zuo einem menschen
 spræche, der iezuo bī gote ist, 'du hāst zehen kint ūf ertrīche,
 und du solt in koufen allen samt, daz sie ēre und guot haben unz
 5 an ir tōt, dā mit, daz du einigen ougenblic von gotes angesiht
 tuost, niuwen als lange als einz sīn hant möht umbe kēren, und
 sich danne wider zuo gote, und du solt dīn ougen niemer mēr
 von im kēren': der mensche entæte sīn niht. Also wār, herre,
 dīn wārheit ist, also wār ist disiu rede, daz er disiu zehen kint
 10 unze an ir tōt ē nāch dem almuosen lieze gēn, ē danne er sich
 die kleine wile von gote wolte wenden. In habent die engel wol
 sehziç hundred jār an gesehen, und sehent in hiute als gerne als
 des ērsten tages. Und sie sint ouch alle samt sam des ērsten
 tages, dō sie got an sehende wurden. Dō wart ir deheiner sīt
 15 nie eltlicher danne des ērsten tages, und sint doch sider wol
 sehziç hundred jār alt. Swelher hundred jār alt würde under
 uns, der wære den liuten also smæhe an ze sehenne von unge-
 staltheit und von dem gebresten, den daz alter an im hæte
 gemaht: sō mālet man die engele—dā sehet ir wol, swā man
 20 sie mält, daz man sie eht anders niht enmält wan als ein kint
 von fünf jāren, als junclich, oder von sehzen. Wan alle, die got
 sehent, die werdent niemer eltlicher, die in in himelrīche sehent
 in sīnen freuden und in sīnen ēren. Ūf ertrīche sehen wir in
 alle tage in sīnem gewalte. Dehein irdenischer muot noch
 25 irdenisch lip möhte daz niht erliden, daz in dehein irdenisch
 ouge iemer an gesehen möhte in sīnen freuden und in sīnen ēren,
 als er ze himelrīche ist. Wir sagen iu ettewenne ein glichnisse,
 wie schœne got sī. Seht, allez daz wir iemer gesagen können
 oder mügen, daz ist rehte dem gliche, als obe ein kint uns solte
 30 sagen, ob ez müglich wære, von aller der wirde und von aller
 der gezierde, die diu werlt hāt, von der liechten sunnen, von den
 liechten sternen, von edelre gesteine craft und von ir maniger
 slahte varwe, von der edelen wūrze craft und von dem edelen
 gesmacke, und von der rīchen gezierde, die man ūzer sīden und
 35 ūzer golde machet in dirre werlte, und von maniger hande

süezen stimme, die diu werlt hāt, von vögelīn sange und von
 seitenspil, und von maniger hande bluomen varwe, und von
 aller der gezierde, die disiu werlt hāt. Alse unmügelich unde
 also unkuntlichen eime kinde dā von ze redenne ist, als unkunt
 ist ouch uns dā von ze redenne, von der unsegelichen wünne, 5
 diu dā ze himel ist, und von dem wünneclichen anlütze des
 lebendigen gotes. ✓ Wan alliu diu freude, diu dā ze himele ist,
 der ist niht wan von dem schīne, der von unsers herren anlütze
 gēt. Und rehte als alle sternen ir lieht von der sunnen nement,
 alsō habent alle heiligen ir gezierde und ir schönheit von gote, 10
 und engele und allez himelische her. Reht als alle die sternen
 des himeles, der māne und die planēten, grōz und kleine, die
 habent alle samt ir lieht von der sunnen, diu uns dā liuhtet:
 und alsō hāt allez himelischez her, engel und heiligen, die
 hōchsten und die minnesten, die habent alle samt ir freude und 15
 ir wünne und ir gezierde und die ēre und die wirde und ouch die
 schōende, daz habent sie alle samt von der angesichte gotes, daz
 sie got an sehent. Die engele, die dā unser hūtetent, die sehent
 in ze aller zīt an, als ob sie bī im wāren. Wan alliu diu freude,
 diu in himelrīche ist, diu diuhte sie ze nihte, solten sie got niht an 20
 sehen. Und dā von 'sælic sint, die reines herzen sint; wan sie
 werdent got sehende.' Nu sehent, wie sælic die sint, die dā reinez
 herze tragent. Ir, junge werlt, die noch unbewollen sint mit
 sünden, behaltent iuwer herze vor allen tœtlichen sünden, sō wer-
 dent ir got sehende in solichen freuden und in sō grōzen ēren, die 25
 ouge nie gesach oder ōre nie gehōrte, alse sant Paulus dā sprichet;
 und alse sant Johannes sprichet: 'wær ez mügelich, daz man ez
 allez samt geschriben möhte, sō möhte diu werlt diu buoch in ir
 niht behalten, dā ez an gestüende, daz ich gesach. Und allez, daz
 ich gesach, daz was niht wan got alleine.' Und dar umbe möhten 30
 wir doch gerne ze dem himelrīche komen und drumbe arbeiten.
 Ob uns niht diu minne und diu liebe dar twünge, der wir gote
 schuldic sīn, seht, sō möhten wir dar umbe dar komen, durch daz
 wunder, daz dā ist. Ez ist maniger vor mir: der im von sō getāner
 freude seite, daz si jenhalf meres wære, er füere gar gerinlichen 35

*if you of and
 beautiful and*

dar von hinnen über mer, niuwen daz erz gesæhe. Sō möhtent
 ir hundertstunt gerner dar umb arbeiten, daz irz iemer mēre ēwic-
 lichen niezen soltet. Die vil wūnnelichen angesiht des almehtigen
 gotes und der himelischen küniginne ze der zeswen sīner sīten in
 5 guldīner wæte, die möhtet ir gerne an sehen. Wan würde iu
 einiger anblic, sō wære iu alliu diu freude und diu ēre und aller
 der wollust, den diu werlt ie gewan, daz wær iu hinne für als
 widerzæme und ouch also unmære, reht als sant Paulus dā sprach.
 Nu hoeret wie er sprach; er sprach: 'alliu diu ēre und diu
 10 freude und daz gemach, diu disiu werlt ie gewan von keisern
 und von künigen, wider der freude, diu in himelrīch ist; als
 widerzæme einem wære ein diep an einem galgen, als kurz einem
 diu wile dā mite wære, daz er einen erhāngen man triuten
 15 solte, wider aller der freude, die diu werlt hāt: also widerzæme
 ist mir diu freude aller der werlte wider der ēwigen freude.'
 Ei wol iuch wart, daz iuch iuwer muoter ie getruoc, die sō
 getāne freude sūln besitzen. Der ist, ob got wil, vil maniger vor
 mīnen ougen. Ouch ist maniger, der vil kleine freude dar für
 nimt hie ūf ertliche, und daz dem guoten sante Paulen gar
 20 versmāhte, des wirt im der tūsentste teil niht. Und die habent
 übel kouft, die sō übergrōze freude gebent umb ein sō kurzeg
 freudelīn in dirre werlte. Die habent übel gevarn; wan sie
 habent weder hie noch dort niht. Als ich iezuo sprach, rehte in
 glīcher wīse, rehte also alle sternen des himeles ir licht von der
 25 sunnen habent, alsō hāt allez himelisch her ir licht von dem
 wāren sunnen, sīt danne unser herre der wære sunne und daz
 wære licht ist, also der guote sant Johannes dā sprichet. Der
 heizet in daz wære licht; als ouch daz vil wār ist: wan er ist
 daz wære licht, daz niemer mēr verlischet. Und alle, die von
 30 sīme gotvarwen lichte enzündet werdent, die erleschent ouch
 niemer mēre von der schönheit, die sie von dem wāren sunnen
 hānt. Und als vil diu sunne liehter und gelpfer ist, danne wir
 dā sehen, rehte als vil diu lichtes und glastes über alle sterne
 hāt, die an dem himel stēnt: als vil hāt der wære sunne in himel-
 35 rīche schīnes und glastes mēr über alle engele und ist geschœnet

splendour

und gewirdet an allen ēren, alse billich ist. Und dā von sint sie
sælic, die ein reinez herze habent; wan si werdent got sehende

II

THE SWABIAN LANTREHTBUOCH.

This work was compiled by David von Augsburg, about 1280 A.D.

HIE HEBET SICH AN DAZ LANTREHTBUOCH.

Herre got, himelischer vater, durch dīne milte güete geschüefe
du den menschen in drīvaltiger werdikeit. Diu erste, daz er 5
nāch dir gebildet ist. Daz ist ouch ein alsō hōhiu werdikeit, der
dir allez menschlich künne sunderlīchen immer danken sol.
Wan des haben wir gar michel reht, vil lieber herre, himelischer
vater, sīt du uns zuo dīner hōhen gotheit alsō werdiclīchen
geedelt hāst. Diu ander werdikeit, dā du, herre got, almāhtic 10
schepfer, den menschen zuo geschaffen hāst, daz ist diu, daz du
alle dise werelt, die sunnen unde den mānen, die sterne unde
diu vier element, viur, wazzer, luft unde die erden, die vogel in
den lūften, die vische in dem wāge, diu tier in dem walde, die
würme in der erden, golt unde edel gesteine, der edeln wūrze 15
süezen smac, der bluomen liechte varwe, der boume frucht unde
ēt alle crēatūre: daz hāst du, herre, allez dem menschen ze
nutze unde ze dienste geschaffen durch die triuwe unde durch
die minne, die du ze dem menschen hetest. Diu dritte werdi-
keit, dā du, herre, den menschen mit gewirdet unde geedelt hāst, 20
daz ist diu, daz der mensche die wirde unde die ēre, die vreude
unde die wünne immer mit dir ewiclīchen niezen sol. Der
werelde dienst unde nuz hāst du, herre, dem menschen umbe
sust gegeben ze einer manunge unde ze einem vorbilde. Sīt
des sō vil ist, des du, herre, dem menschen umbe sust gegeben 25
hāst, dā bī sol der mensche nu trahten, sō mege des wol gar
übermæziclīchen vil sīn, des du dem menschen umbe sīnen

dienst geben wilt. Unde dar umbe sol ein iegelich mensche got dienen mit ganzen triuwen; wan der lön ist alsö übermæziclichen grōz, daz in herzen sin nie betrachten möhte noch menschen zunge nie gesprechen möhte, noch ougen sehen kunde in nie
 5 beluhten, noch öre nie gehöeren. Daz wir nu got der hōhen werdikeit gedanken unde den grōzen lön verdienen, des helfe uns der almächtige got. āmen.

Sīt uns got in sō hōher werdikeit geschaffen hāt, sō wil er ouch, daz wir werdez leben haben, unde daz wir einander wirde
 10 unde ēre erbieten, triuwe unde wārheit, niht haz unde nīt einander tragen. Wir sullen mit fride unde mit suone under einander leben. Fridlich leben hāt unser herre got lieb. Wan er kom von himelrīche uf erderīche durch anders niht wan durch den rechten fride, daz er uns einen rechten fride schüefe vor der ewigen
 15 marter, ob wir selben wellen. Unde dā von sunen die engel ob der krippen: '*Gloria in excelsis deo et in terra pax hominibus bonae voluntatis*'—'Gots öre in dem himel unde guot fride uf der erden allen den, die guoten willen habent uf erderīche!' Dō unser herre got hie uf erderīche gie, sō was daz ie sīn ellich
 20 wort: '*Pax vobis!*' daz sprichet: 'der fride sī mit iu!' unde alsö sprach er alle zīt zuo sīnen jungern unde zuo andern liuten. Unde dā bī suln wir merken, wie rehte lieb der almechtige got den rechten vride hāt. Wan dō er von erderīche wider uf zuo himel fuor, dō sprach er aber zuo sīnen jungern: 'der
 25 vride sī mit iu!' unde enphalh dem guoten Sant Pēter, daz er phleger wære über den rechten fride, unde gap im den gewalt, daz er den himel uf slüzze allen den, die den fride hielten, unde swer den fride bræche, daz er dem den himel vor beslüzze. Daz ist alsö gesprochen: ēt alle, die diu gebot unsers herren zebre-
 30 chent, die habent ouch den rechten fride gebrochen. Daz ist ouch von gote reht, swer diu gebot unsers herren zebrichet, daz man dem den himel vor besluzet, sīt uns got nu geholfen hāt, daz wir mit rehtem leben unde mit fridlichem leben daz himelrīch verdienen mügen. Wan daz was niht vor gotes geburt, swie wol der mensche tæť in aller der werelde, sō mohte er doch

ze dem himelrîch niht komen. Got geschuof des ěrsten himel unde erden, dar nāch den menschen unde sazte in in daz paradys. Der zebrach die gehōrsam uns allen ze schaden; dar umbe gienge wir irre sam diu hirtelōsen schāf, daz wir in daz himelrîch niht mohten, unz an die zīt, daz uns got den wec dar wiste mit sīner marter, unde dar umbe solde wir got immer loben unde ěren von allem unserm herzen unde von aller unserre sēle unde von aller unserre maht, daz wir nu sō wol ze den ěwigen freuden kāmen, ob wir wolden; daz hie vor manigen heiligen patriarken unde prophēten tiure was. Diu genāde unde diu sēlikheit ist uns kristen liuten nu widervaren, daz wir nu wol daz himelrîch mugen verdienen. Unde swer des niht entuot unde diu gebot unsers herren zebrichet, daz richet er billichen an im.

VON VRĪEN LIUTEN.

Wir zelen dr̄ier hande vr̄ien. Der heizent eine sempervr̄ien: daz sint die vr̄ien herren, als f̄ürsten unde die ander fr̄ien ze man hānt. Sō heizent die andern miter vr̄ien: daz sint die, die der hōhen vr̄ien man sint. Die driten vr̄ien daz sint die vr̄ien lantsæzen, die gebūren, die dā vr̄i sint. Der hāt ieglicher sīn sunder reht, als wir her nāch wol bescheiden.

20

VON TIUTSCHER LIUTE ĚREN.

Die tiutschen kiesent den k̄ünic: daz erwarb in der k̄ünic Karl. Swenne er gewīhet wirt unt ūf den stuol ze Ache gesetzet wirt mit der willen, die in erwelt hānt, sō hāt er k̄üniclichen gewalt unde namēn.—Den k̄ünic kiuset man ze rihter umbe eigen unde umbe lēhen unde über iegliches menschen līp unde umbe allez, daz v̄ür in ze klagen kumet. Der keiser mac in allen landen niht gesīn, unde mac allez ungerihte niht verrihten. Dā von lihet er den f̄ürsten unde andern herren wereltlich gerihte. An die vierten hant mac dehein gerihte nimmer komen mit rehte, dā man umbe menschenbluot rihten sol ode umbe alle v̄revel.

or

insolence

... will of those who have elected him

*of Longfellow's
Epicurean Legend*

III

HARTMAN VON OUWE.

He was born somewhere between 1160-1170, in the neighbourhood of Rottenburg in Swabia, and died about 1220.

The following extract is taken from Paul's edition : Der Arme Heinrich, Halle, 1882.

Ein ritter sō gelēret was	
daz er an den buochen las	
swaz er dar an geschriben vant.	
der was Hartman genant,	
dienstman was er ze Ouwe.	5
er nam im mange schouwe	
an mislichen buochen:	<i>only</i>
dar an begunde er suochen	
ob er iht <u>des</u> funde	<i>of this</i>
dā mite er swære stunde	10
möhte senfter machen,	
und von sō <u>gewanten</u> sachen	
daz gotes ēren töhte	<i>helfen</i>
und dā mite er sich möhte	
gelieben den liuten.	15
nu beginnet er iu <u>diuten</u>	<i>relate</i>
ein rede die er geschriben vant.	
dar umbe hāt er sich genant,	
daz er sīner arbeit	
die er dar an hāt geleit	20
iht āne lōn belibe,	
und swer nāch sīnem libe	
sī hōere sagen oder lese,	
daz er im bittende wese	
der sēle heiles hin ze gote.	25
man seit, er sī sīn selbes bote	

of such a nature

unde erlœse sich dā mite,
 swer über des andern schulde bite.

Er las ditze mære,
 wie ein herre wære 30
 ze Swāben gesezzen:
 an dem enwas vergezzen
 deheiner der tugende
 die ein ritter in sīner jugende
 ze vollem lobe haben sol. 35
 man sprach dō niemen alsō wol
 in allen den landen.
 er hete ze sīnen handen
 geburt und dar zuo rīcheit:
 ouch was sīn tugent vil breit. 40
 swie ganz sīn habe wære,
 sīn geburt unwandelbære
 und wol den fürsten gelich,
 doch was er unnāch alsō rīch *not nearly*
 der gebūrte und des guotes. 45
 sō der ēren und des muotes.

Sīn name der was erkennelich,
 und hiez der herre Heinrich,
 und was von Ouwe geborn.
 sīn herze hāte ^{mit} versworn (*design*) *beriebt* 50
 valsch und alle törperheit, *vulgarity*
 und behielt ouch vaste den eit
 stæte unz an sīn ende.
 ān alle missewende *fault*
 stuont sīn ēre und sīn leben. 55
 im was der rehte wunsch gegeben
 ze werltlichen ēren:
 die kunde er wol gemēren
 mit aller hande reiner tugent.
 er was ein bluome der jugent, 60
 der werlte fröude ein spiegelglas.

stæter triuwe ein adamas, *diamond - pearl*
 ein ganziu kröne der zuht. *brood*
 er was der nōthaften fluht,
 ein schilt sīner māge, *relative*
 der milte ein glīchiu wāge:
 im enwart über noch gebrast. *marrying*
 er truoc den arbeitsamen last
 der ēren über rücke.

65

er was des rātes brücke,
 und sanc vil wol von minnen.
 alsus kund er gewinnen
 der werlte lop unde prīs.
 er was hübesch unde dar zuo wīs.

70

Dō der herre Heinrich
 alsō geniete sich
 ēren unde guotes *un-1*
 und frœliches muotes
 und werltlicher wünne
 (er was für al sīn künne *reheiden*)
 geprīset unde geēret),
 sīn hōher muot wart verkēret
 in ein leben gar geneiget.

75

an im wart erzeiget,
 also ouch an Absolōne,
 daz diu üppige kröne
 werltlicher stüeze
vellet under fūeze
 ab ir besten werdekeit,
 als uns diu schrift hāt geseit.
 ez spricht an einer stete dā,
 'mēdiā vitā

85

in morte sumus':
 daz bediutet sich alsus,
 daz wir in dem tōde sweben
 sō wir aller beste wænen leben.

90

95

think

Dirre werlte veste,
 ir stæte, unde ir beste
 unde ir grøeste ^{magen} magenkraft,
^{also} diu stât āne meisterschaft. 100
 des muge wir an der kerzen sehen
 ein wārez bilde geschehen,
 daz sī zeiner aschen wirt
 enmitten dō sī licht birt.
 wir sīn von broeden sachen. 105
 nū sehent wie unser lachen
 mit weinen erlischet.
 unser sūeze ist vermischet
 mit bitterre gallen.
 unser bluome der muoz vallen 110
 so er allergrūenest wānet sīn.
 an hern Heinriche wart wol schīn,
^{wer} in dem hōhesten werde
 lebet ūf dirre erde,
 derst der versmāhete vor gote. 115
 er viel von sīme gebote
 ab sīner besten werdekeit
 in ein versmāhelichez leit:
 in ergreif diu miselsuht.
 dō man die swāren gotes zuht 120
 gesach an sīnem libe,
 manne unde wībe
 wart er dō widerzāeme. ^{repulsive}
 nū sehent wie genāeme ^{pleasant}
 er ē der werlte wære, 125
 und wart nū also unmāere
 daz in niemen gerne an sach:
 also ouch Jōbe geschach,
 dem edeln und dem rīchen,
 der ouch ^{vil} jāmerlichen 130
 dem miste wart ze teile

mitten in sime heile.

Und dō der arme Heinrich

alfr alrēst verstuont sich

daz er der werlte widerstuont, *removed* 135

als alle sīne gelichen tuont,

removed dō schiet in sīn bitter leit

von Jōbes gedultikeit.

wan ez leit Jōb der guote

mit gedultigem ~~muote~~, 140

do ez ime ze lidenne geschach,

durch der sēle gemach.

den siechtuom und die smācheit

die er von der werlte leit,

des lobet er got und fröute sich. 145

dō tet der arme Heinrich

leider niender alsō :

Amel wan er was trürec unde unfrō.

sīn swebendez herze daz verswanc,

sīn swimmendiu fröude ertranc, 150

sīn hōchvart muoste vallen,

sīn honic wart ze gallen,

ein swinde vinsten donreslac

zerbrach im sīnen mitten tac,

ein trüebez wolken unde dic 155

Amel bedaht' im sīner sunnen blic.

er sente sich vil sēre *gile*

daz er sō manege ēre

hinder im müeste lāzen. *Amel*

verfluochet und verwāzen *Amel*

wart vil ofte der tac 160

dā sīn geburt ane lac.

Ein wēnic frōuwet er sich doch

von eime trōste dannoch :

wan im wart dicke geseit

daz disiū selbe siecheit 165

wære vil mislich *different*
 und etelichiu gnislich.
 des wart vil maneger slahte *maner*
 sîn gedinge und sîn ahte. 170
 er gedächte daz er wære
 vil lihte genisbære,
 und fuor alsō dräte *lohtthut*
 nāch der arzāte rāte
 gegen Munpasiliere. 175
 dā vant er vil schiere
 niht wan den untröst
 daz er niemer würde erlöst.
 Daz hōrte er vil ungerne,
 und fuor gegen Sālerne 180
 und suochte ouch dā durch genist *reiding*
 der wīsen arzāte list. *advice*
 den besten meister er dā vant.
 der seite ime zehant. *to*
 ein seltsæne mære, 185
 daz er genislich wære
 und wære doch iemer ungenesen.
 dō sprach er 'wie mac daz wesen?
 diu rede ist harte unmügelich.
 bin ich gnislich, sō genise ich: 190
 und swaz mir für wirt geleit
 von guote oder von arbeit,
 daz trūwe ich vollebringen.' *hope*
 'nū lāt daz gedingen'
 sprach der meister aber dō: 195
 'iuwerre sūhte ist alsō *seekness*
 (waz frumet daz ichz iu kunt tuo?):
 dā hōeret arzenīe zuo: *medicines*
 des wæret ir genislich.
 nu enist ab nieman sō rīch 200
 noch von sō starken sinnen

der sī mūge gewinnen.
des sint ir iemer ungenesen,
got enwelle der arzāt wesen.'

Dō sprach der arme Heinrich
'war umbe untroestent ir mich?
jā hān ich guotes wol die kraft:
ir enwellent iuwer meisterschaft
und iuwer reht ouch brechen
und dar zuo versprechen

205

beidiu mīn silber und mīn golt,
ich mache iuch mir alsō holt
daz ir mich harte gerne ernert.'

210

'mir wære der wille unrewert'
sprach der meister aber dō:

215

'und wære der arzenie alsō
daz man sī veile funde
oder daz man sī kunde
mit deheinen dingen erwerben,
ich enlieze iuch niht verderben,
nu enmac des leider niht sīn:
dā von muoz iu diu helfe mīn
durch alle nōt sīn versaget.

220

ir müesent haben eine maget
diu vollen erbære

225

und ouch des willen wære
daz sī den tōt durch iuch lite.
nu enist ez niht der liute site
daz ez iemen gerne tuo.

sō hoert ouch anders niht dar zuo
niwan der megede herzen bluot:
daz wære für iuwer suht guot.'

230

Nu erkantē der arme Heinrich
daz daz wære unmügelich
daz iemen den erwürbe
der gerne für in stürbe.

235

alsus was im der tröst benomen
 ûf den er dar was komen,
 und dar nâch für die selben frist
 hât er ze sîner genist 240
 dehein gedinge mēre. *Handwritten: 240*
 des wart sîn herzesēre
 alsō kreftic unde grōz,
 daz in des aller meist verdrōz,
 ob er langer solte leben. 245
 nū fuor er heim und begunde geben
 sîn erbe und ouch sîn varnde guot,
 als in dō sîn selbes muot
 und wiser rât lēte,
 da erz aller bestē bekēte. 250
 er begundē bescheidenlichen
 sîn armen friunde rīchen
 und trōste ouch frōmde armen,
 daz sich got erbarmen
 geruochte über der sēle heil: 255
 gotes hiusern viel daz ander teil.
 alsus sō tet er sich abe
 bescheidenlichen sîner habe
 unz an ein geriute: *Handwritten: an alle lute*
 dar flōch er die liute. 260
 disiu jæmerliche geschicht
 diu was sîn eines klage niht:
 in klageten elliu diu lant
 dā er inne was erkant,
 und ouch von vrōmden landen 265
 die in nâch sage erkanden.
 Der ē ditz geriute
 und der ez dannoch biute,
 daz was ein frier būman
 der vil selten ie gewan 270
 dehein grōz ungemach, *Handwritten: 270*

present

daz andern gebüren doch geschach,
 die wirs geherret wāren,
 und sī die niht verbāren *entbären*

rot

beidiu mit stūre und mit bete. *Command!*

275

swaz dirre gebüre gerne tete,
 des dūhte sīnen herren gnuoc:

dar zuo er in übertruoc

daz er dehein arbeit

von frömdem gewalte leit.

280

des was deheiner sīn gelich

in dem lande alsō rīch.

zuo deme zōch sich

sīn herre, der arme Heinrich.

swaz er in het ē gespart,

285

wie wol daz nū gedienet wart

und wie schöne er sīn genōz!

wan in vil lützel des verdrōz

swaz im geschach durch in.

er hete die triuwe und ouch den sin

290

daz er vil willeclīche leit

den kumber und die arbeit

diu ime ze lidenne geschach.

er schuof ime rīch gemach.

falsch

Got hete dem meiger gegeben

295

nāch sīner ahte ein reinez leben.

er hete ein wol erbeiten līp

und ein wol werbendez wīp, *schon*

dar zuo het er schoeniu kint,

diu gar des mannes fröude sint,

300

unde hete, sō man saget,

under den kinden eine maget,

ein kint von ahte jāren:

daz kunde wol gebāren

sō rehte gütlichen:

305

sī wolte nie entwīchen

von ir herren einen fuoz:
 umb sīne hulde und sīnen gruoꝝ
 sō diene si ime alle wege -

mit ir gütlichen pflege. 310

sī was ouch sō genæme
 daz sī wol gezæme
 ze kinde deme rīche
 an ir wætliche. *beauty*

Die andern heten den sīn 315

daz sī ze rehter māꝝe in
 wol gemīden kunden:

sō flōch sī zallen stunden
 zuo ime und niender anders war.
 sī was sīn kurzewīle gar. 320

sī hete gar ir gemüete
 mit reiner kindes güete
 an ir herren gewant,
 daz man sī zallen zīten vant
 under ir herren fuoꝝe. 325

mit süezer unmuoꝝe *emazheit*
 wonte sī ir herren bī.

dar zuo sō liebte er ouch sī
 swā mite sō er mohte,
 und daz der meide tohte 330

zuo ir kintlichen spil,
 des gab der herre ir vil.
 ouch half in sēre daz diu kint
 sō lihte ze gewenenne sint.

er gewan ir swaz er veile vant, 335
 spiegel unde hārbant, *herdbrand*

gürtel unde vingerlīn *ring*
 und swaz kinden lieb solte sīn.

mit dienste brāhte er s' ūf die vart
 daz sī im alsō heimlich wart

daz er sī sīn gemahle hiez. 340

ap 23

diu guote maget in liez
 beliben selten eine:
 er dūhte sī vil reine.
 swie starke ir daz geriete 345
 diu kindische miete,
 iedoch geliebte irz aller meist
 von gotes gebe ein stüezer geist.

Ir dienst war sō gütlich.
 dō dō der arme Heinrich 350
 driu jār dā getwelte
 unde im got gequelte
 mit grōzem jāmer den līp,
 nū saz der meier und sīn wīp
 unde ir tohter, diu maget 355
 von der ich iu ē hān gesaget,
 bī im in ir unmüezekeit
 und begunden klagen ir herren leit.
 diu klage tet in michel nōt:
 wan sī vorhten daz sīn tot 360
 sī sēre solte letzen
 und vil gar entsetzen
 ēren unde guotes
 und daz herters muotes
 würde ein ander herre. 365
 sī gedāhten alsō verre
 unz dirre selbe būman
 alsus frāgen began.

Er sprach ' lieber herre mīn,
 möht ez mit iuwern hulden sīn, 370
 ich frāgte vil gerne.
 sō vil ze Sālerne
 von arzenīen meister ist,
 wie kumet daz ir deheines list
 ze iuwerme ungesunde
 niht gerāten kunde? 375

herre, des wundert mich.
 dō holte der arme Heinrich
 tiefen süft von herzen
 mit bitterlichem smerzen: 380
 mit solher riuwe er dō sprach
 daz ime der süft daz wort zerbrach.
 'Ich hān disen schemelichen spot
 vil wol gedienet umbe got.
 wan dū sæhe wol hie vor 385
 daz hōh offen stuont mīn tor
 nāch werltlicher wünne
 und daz niemen in sīnem künne
 sīnen willen baz hete dan ich:
 und was daz doch unmügelich, 390
 wan ich enhete niht gar.
 dō nam ich sīn vil kleine war
 der mir daz selbe wunschleben
 von sīnen gnāden hete gegeben.
 daz herze mir dō alsō stuont 395
 als alle werlttōren tuont,
 den daz saget ir muot
 daz sī ēre unde guot
 āne got mügen hān.
 sus troug ouch mich mīn tumber wān, 400
 wan ich in lützel ane sach
 von des genāden mir geschach
 vil ēren unde guotes.
 dō dō des hōhen muotes
 den hōhen portenære bedrōz, 405
 die sælden porte er mir beslōz.
 dane kum ich leider niemer in:
 daz verworhte mir mīn tumber sin.
 got hāt durch rāche an mich geleit
 ein sus gewante siecheit 410
 die niemen mag erlösen,

nū versmæhent mich die boesen,
 die biderben ruochent mīn niht.
 swie böese er ist der mich gesiht,
 des boeser muoz ich dannoch sīn. 415
 sīn unwert tuot er mir schīn:
 er wirfēt diu ougen abe mir.
 nū schīnet ērste an dir
 dīn triuwe die dū hāst,
 daz dū mich siechen bī dir lāst 420
 und von mir niht enfliehest.
 swie dū mich niht enschliehest,
 swie ich niemen liep sī danne dir,
 swie vil dīns heiles stē an mir,
 du vertrüegest doch wol mīnen tōt. 425
 nū wes unwert und wes nōt
 wart ie zer werlte merre?
 hie vor was ich dīn herre
 und bin dīn dürfuge nū.
 mīn lieber friunt, nu koufest dū 430
 und mīn gemahle und dīn wīp
 an mir den ēwigen līp
 daz dū mich siechen bī dir lāst.
 des dū mich gefrāget hāst,
 daz sage ich dir vil gerne. 435
 ichn kunde ze Sālerne
 einen meister niender vinden
 der sich mīn underwinden
 getörste oder wolte.
 wan dā mite ich solte 440
 mīner sūhte genesen,
 daz müeste ein solhiu sache wesen
 die in der werlte nieman
 mit nihte gewinnen kan.
 mir wart niht anders dā gesaget 445
 wan ich müeste haben eine maget

diu vollen manbære
 und ouch des willen wære
 daz sī den tōt durch mich lite
 und man sī zuo dem herzen snite, 450
 und mir wære niht anders guot
 wan von ir herzen daz bluot.
 nū ist genuoc unmügelich
 daz ir deheiniu durch mich
 gerne lide den tōt. 455

des muoz ich schemeliche nōt
 tragen unz an mīn ende.
 daz mirz got schiere sende!
 Daz er dem vater hete gesagt,
 daz erhōrte ouch diu reine magt: 460
 wan ez hete diu vil stüeze

ir lieben herren fūeze
 stānde in ir schōzen,
 man möhte wol genōzen
 ir kintlich gemüete 465
 hin ze der engel gūete.

sīner rede nam sī war
 unde marhte sī ouch gar:
 sī enkam von ir herzen nie
 unz man des nahtes slāfen gie. 470

dō sī zir vater fūezen lac
 und ouch ir muoter, sō sī pflac,
 und sī beide entsliefen,
 manegen sūft tiefen
 holte sī von herzen. 475

umbe ir herren smerzen
 wart ir riuwe alsō grōz
 daz ir ougen regen begōz
 der slāfenden fūeze,
 sus erwachte sī diu stüeze. 480

Dō sī der trehene enpfunden,

si erwachten und begunden
 sī frāgen waz ir wære
 und welher hande swære
 sī alsō stille möhte klagen. 485
 nu enwolte sī es in niht sagen,
 wan daz ir vater aber tete
 vil manege drō unde bete
 daz sī ez ime wolte sagen.
 sī sprach 'ir möhtent mit mir klagen. 490
 waz möhte uns mē gewerren
 danne umb unsern herren,
 daz wir den suln verliesen
 und mit ime verkiesen
 beide guot und ēre? 495
 wir gewinnen niemer mēre
 deheinen herren alsō guot
 der uns tuo daz er uns tuot.'
 Sī sprāchen 'tochter, dū hāst wār.
 nū frumet uns leider niht ein hār 500
 unser riuwe und dīn klage:
 liebez kint, dā von gedage.
 ez ist uns alsō leit sō dir.
 leider nū enmuge wir
 ime ze keinen staten komen. 505
 got der hāt in uns benomen:
 het ez iemen anders getān,
 der müese unsern fluoch hān. ✓
 Alsus gesweigēten sī sī dō.
 die naht beleip sī unfrō 510
 und morne allen den tac.
 swes iemen anders pflac,
 diz enkam von ir herzen nie
 unz man des andern nahtes gie
 slāfen nāch gewonheit. 515
 dō sī sich hete geleit

an ir alte bettestat,
 sī bereite aber ein bat
 mit weinenden ougen :
 wan sī truoc tougen 520
 nāhe in ir gemüete
 die aller meisten güete
 die ich von kinde ie vernam.
 welch kint getete ouch ie alsam ?
 des einen sī sich gar verwac, 525
 gelebetę sī morne den tac,
 daz sī benamen ir leben
 umbe ir herren wolte geben.

Von dem gedanke wart sī dō
 vil ringes muotes unde frō, 530
 und hete deheine sorge mē,
 wan ein vorhtę diu tete ir wē,
 sō sīz ir herren sagte,
 daz er dar an verzagte,
 und swenne sīz in allen drin 535
 getæte kunt, daz sī an in
 der gehenge niht enfunde
 daz mans ir iht gunde.

Des wart sō grōz ir ungehabe
 daz ir muoter dar abe 540
 unde ir vater wart erwahet
 als ouch an der vordern naht.
 sī rihten sich ūf zuo ir
 und sprāchen 'sich, waz wirret dir ?
 dū bist vil alwære 545
 daz du dich sō manege swære
 von solher klage hāst an genomen
 der niemen mac zeim ende komen.
 war umbę lāstu uns niht slāfen ?'
 sus begunden sī sī strāfen. 550
 waz ir diu klage tōhte,

die niemen doch enmöhte
 verenden noch gebüezen?
 sus wänden sī die süezen
 gesweigen an der selben stunt:
 dō was ir wille in vil unkunt. 555

Sus antwurte in diu maget.
 'als uns mīn herre hāt gesaget,
 sō mac man in vil wol ernern.
 zewäre, ir welt mirz danne wern, 560
 sō bin ich ze der arzenie guot.
 ich bin ein maget und hān den muot,
 ē ich in sihe verderben,
 ich wil ē für in sterben.'

Von dirre rede wurden dō 565
 trūric unde unfrō
 beide muoter unde vater.
 sīne tohter die bat er
 daz sī die rede lieze
 und ir herren gehieze 570
 daz sī geleisten möhte,
 wand ir diz niht entöhte.

Er sprach 'tohter, dū bist ein kint
 und dine triuwe die sint
 ze grōz an disen dingen. 575
 du enmaht es niht für bringen
 als dū uns hie hāst verjehen.
 dū hāst des tōdes niht gesehen.
 swenn ez dir kumet ūf die frist
 daz des dehein rāt ist, 580
 dū enmüezest sterben,
 und möhtest dūz erwerben,
 dū lebetest gerner dannoch:
 wan dun kāme nie in leider loch.
 dā von tuo zuo dīnen munt:
 und wirstū für dise stunt 585

der rede iemer mēre lūt,
ez gāt dir ūf dīne hūt.'

Alsus sō wānde er sī dō
bēdiu mit bete und mit drō 590
gesweigen : dō enmohter.
sus antwurt ime sīn tohter.

'Vater mīn, swie tump ich sī,
mir wonet iedoch diu witze bī
daz ich von sage wol die nōt 595
erkenne daz des lībes tōt
ist starc unde strenge.

swer ouch danne die lenge
mit arbeiten leben sol,
dem ist iedoch niht ze wol. 600

wan swenne er hie geringet
und ūf sīn alter bringet
den līp mit michelre nōt,
sō muoz er liden doch den tōt.
ist ime diu sēle danne verlorn, 605

sō wære er bezzer ungeboren.
ez ist mir komen ūf daz zil, daz
des ich got iemer loben wil,
daz ich den jungen līp mac geben
umbē daz ewige leben. 610

nū sult ir mirz niht leiden.
ich wil mir unde iu beiden
vil harte wol mite varn.
ich mag iuch eine wol bewarn 615
vor schaden und vor leide,
als ich iu nū bescheide.

ir hānt ēre unde guot :
daz meinet mīnes herren muot,
wan er iu leit nie gesprach
und ouch daz, guot nie abe gebrach. 620
die wile daz er leben sol

sō stēt iuwer sache wol :	
und lāze wir den sterben,	
sō müezen wir verderben.	
den wil ich uns fristen	625
mit alsō schoenen listen	
dā mite wir alle sīn genesen.	
nū gunnet mirs, wan ez muoꝝ wesen.'	
Diu muoter weinende sprach,	
dō sī der tohter ernst ersach,	630
'gedenke, tohter, liebez kint,	
wie grōꝝ die arbeite sint	
die ich durch dich erliten hān,	
und lā mich bezzern lōn enpfān	
dan ich dich høre sprechen.	635
dū wilt mīn herze brechen.	
senfte mir der rede ein teil.	
jā wiltū allez dīn heil	
an uns verwürken wider got.	
wan gedenkest dū an sīn gebot?	640
jā gebōt er unde bat er	
daz man muoter unde vater	
minne und ēre biete,	
und geheizet daz ze miete	
daz der sēle rāt werde	645
und lanclīp ūf der erde.	
dū gihst, dū wellest dīn leben	
umb unser beider frōude geben :	
dū wilt uns beiden	
daz leben vaste leiden.	650
daz dīn vater unde ich	
gerne leben, daz ist durch dich.	
waz solte uns līp unde guot,	a
waz solte uns werltlich muot,	b
swenne wir dīn enbæren?	c
dune	d

jā soltū, liebiu tohter mīn,
 unser beider frōude sīn,
 gar unsers libes wūne, 655
 ein bluome in dīme kūne,
 unsers alters ein stap.
 und lāstū uns über dīn grap
 gestēn von dīnen schulden,
 dū muost von gotes hulden 660
 iemer sīn gescheiden:
 daz koufest an uns beiden.'
 'wiltu uns tohter wesen guot, a
 sō soltū rede und den muot b
 durch unsers herren hulde lān, c
 die ich von dir vernomen hān.' d

Si sprach 'muoter, ich getrūwe dir
 und mīnem vater her ze mir
 aller der genāden wol 665
 der vater unde muoter sol
 leisten ir kinde,
 als ich ez wol bevinde
 an iu allerteglich.
 von iuvern gnāden hān ich 670
 die sēle und einen schōenen līp.
 mich lobet man unde wīp,
 und alle die mich sehende sint,
 ich sī daz schōeneste kint
 daz sī zir lebene haben gesehen. 675
 wem solt ich der genāden jehen *James*
niuwan iu zwein nāch gotē? *script*
 des sol ich ze iuerm gebote
 iemer vil gerne stān:
 wie michel reht ich des hān! 680
 muoter, sēligez wīp,
 sīt ich nū sēle unde līp
 von iuvern genāden hān,

script to you two after god

sō lāntz an iuvern hulden stān
 daz ich ouch die beide 685
 von dem tiuvel scheide
 und mich gote müeze geben.
 jā ist dirre werlte leben
 niuwan der sēle verlust.
 ouch hāt mich werltlich gelust 690
 unz her noch niht berüeret,
 der hin zer helle füeret.
 nū wil ich gote genāde sagen
 daz er in mīnen jungen tagen
 mir die sinne hāt gegeben 695
 daz ich ūf diz bröede leben
 ahte harte kleine.
 ich wil mich alsus reine
 antwürten in gotes gewalt.
 ich fürhte, solt ich werden alt, 700
 daz mich der werlte süeze
 zuhte under füeze,
 als sī vil manegen hāt gezogen
 den ouch ir süeze hāt betrogen :
 sō würde ich lihte gote entsaget. 705
 gote müeze ez sīn geklaget
 daz ich unz morne leben sol :
 mir behaget diu werlt niht sō wol.
 ir meiste liep ist herzeleit
 (daz sī iu für wār geseit), 710
 ir süezer lōn ein bitter nōt,
 ir lancelben ein gæher tōt.
 wir hān niht gewisses mē
 wan hiute wol und morne wē
 und ie ze jungest der tōt. 715
 daz ist ein jæmerlichiu nōt.
 ez enschirmet geburt noch guot,
 schœene, sterke, hœher muot,

ez enfrumt tugent noch ēre
 für den tōt niht mēre 720
 dann ungeburt und untugent.
 unser leben und unser jugent
 ist ein nebel unde ein stoup,
 unser stæte bibent als ein loup.
 er ist ein vil verschaffen gouch 725
 der gerne in sich vazzt den rouch,
 ez sī wīp oder man,
 der diz niht wol bedenken kan
 und ouch der werlt nāch folgende ist.
 wan uns ist über den fūlen mist 730
 der pfeller hie gespreitet:
 swen nū der blic verleitet,
 der ist zuo der hellē geborn
 unde enhāt niht mē verlorn
 wan beidiu sēle unde līp. 735
 nu gedenkent, sæligez wīp,
 müeterlicher triuwe
 und senftent iuwer riuwe
 die ir dā habent umbe mich:
 so bedenket ouch der vater sich. 740
 ich weiz wol daz er mir heiles gan.
 er ist ein alsō biderber man
 daz er erkennet wol daz ir
 unlange doch mit mir
 iuwer frōude mūgent hān, 745
 ob ich joch lebende bestān.
 belībe ich āne man bī iu
 zwei jār oder driu,
 sō ist mīn herre lihte tōt,
 und kument in sō grōze nōt 750
 vil lihte von armuot
 daz ir mir alsolhez guot
 zeinem man niht mugent geben,

ich enmüeze alse swache leben
 daz ich iu lieber wære töt. 755
 nu verswige wir aber der nôt,
 daz uns niht enwerre
 und uns mîn lieber herre
 were und alsô lange lebe
 unz daz man mich zeim manne gebe 760
 der rîche sî unde wert:
 sô ist geschehen des ir dâ gert
 und wænent mir sî wol geschehen.
 anders hât mir mîn muot verjehen.
 wirt er mir lieb, daz ist ein nôt: 765
 wirt er mir leit, daz ist der töt.
 wan sô hân ich iemer leit
 und bin mit ganzer arbeit
 gescheiden von gemache
 mit maneger hande sache 770
 diu den wîben wirret
 und sî ze fröuden irret.
 nû setzt mich in den vollen rât
 der dâ niemer zergât.
 mîn gert ein frîer bûman 775
 dem ich wol mînes lîbes gan.
 zwære, dem sult ir mich geben,
 sô ist geschaffet wol mîn leben.
 im gêt sîn pfluoc harte wol,
 sîn hof ist alles râtes vol, 780
 da enstirbet ros noch daz rint,
 da enmüent diu weinenden kint,
 da enist ze heiz noch ze kalt,
 dâ wirt von jâren niemen alt,
 der alte wirt junger, 785
 da enist frost noch hunger,
 da enist deheiner slahte leit,
 da ist ganziu fröude ân arbeit.

ze dem wil ich mich ziehen
 und solhen bū fliehen 790
 den daz fiur und der hagel sleht
 und der wāc abe tweht,
 mit dem man ringet unde ie ranc.
 swaz man daz jār also lanc
 dar ūf gearbeiten mac, 795
 daz verliuset schiere ein halber tac.
 den bū den wil ich lāzen :
 er sī von mir verwāzen.
 ir minnent mich : deist billich.
 nū sihe ich gerne daz mich 800
 iuwer minne iht unminne.
 ob ir iuch rehter sinne
 an mir verstān kunnent
 und ob ir mir gunnent
 beide guotes unde ēren, 805
 sō lāzet mich kēren
 ze unserm herren Jēsū Krist,
 des gnāde alsō stāte ist
 daz sī niemer zergāt,
 unde ouch zuo mir armen hāt 810
 alsō grōze minne
 als zeiner küniginne.
 ich sol von mīnen schulden
ūz iuwer hulden
 niemer komen, wil ez got. 815
 ez ist gewisse sīn gebot
 daz ich iu sī undertān,
 wan ich den līp von iu hān :
 daz leist ich āne riuwe. *sprechen 102*
 ouch sol ich mīne triuwe 820
 an mir selber niht brechen.
 ich hōrte ie daz sprechen,
 swer den andern frōuwet sō *glücken*

daz er selbe wirt unfrõ, *unhappy* 825
 und swer den andern kroenet
 und sich selben hoenet, *disgrace*
 der triuwen sī ze vil.
 wie gerne ich iu des volgen wil
 daz ich iu triuwe leiste,
 mir selber doch die meiste. 830
 welt ir mir wenden mīn heil,
 sō lāz ich iuch ein teil
 ē nāch mir geweinen,
 ich enwelle mir erscheinen
 wes ich mir selber schuldic bin. 835
 ich wil iemer dā hin
 da ich volle frōude vinde.
 ir hānt doch mē kinde:
 diu lānt iuwer frōude sīn
 und getroestent ir iuch mīn. *can be comforted* 840
 wan mir mac daz nieman erwern,
 zwāre, ich enwelle ernern
 mīnen herren unde mich.
 muoter, jā hōrte ich dich
 klagen unde sprechen ē, 845
 ez tæte dīme herzen wē,
 soltest dū ob mīme grabe stān.
 des wirst dū harte wol erlān:
 dū stāst ob mīme grabe niht.
 wan dā der tōt geschiht, 850
 daz enlāt dich niemen sehen:
 ez sol ze Sālerne geschehen.
 dā sol uns viere der tōt a
 lōsen von aller slahte nōt. b
 des tōdes des genese wir,
 und ich doch verre baz dan ir.
 Dō sī daz kint dō sāhen 855
 ze dem tōde sō gāhen,

und ez sō wīslīchen sprach
unde menschlich reht zerbrach,
sī begunden ahten under in
daz die wīsheit und den sin 860
niemer erzeigen kunde
dehein zunge in kindes munde.
sī jāhen daz der heiliggeist
der rede wære ir volleist,
der ouch sante Niklauses pflac 865
dō er in der wagen lac
und in die wīsheit lēre
daz er ze gote kēre
sīne kintliche güete :
und bedāhten sich in ir gemüete 870
daz sī niht enwolden
sī wenden noch ensolden
des sī sich hete an genomen :
der willē sī ir von gote kōmen.
von jāmer erkalte in der līp, 875
dō der meiger und sīn wīp
an dem bette sāzen
und vil gar vergāzen
durch des kindes minne
der zungen und der sinne 880
sā ze der selben stunde.
ir enwederz enkunde
einic wort gesprechen.
daz gegihtē begunde brechen
die muoter von leide. 885
sus gesāzen sī beide
riuwic unde unfrō
unz sī sich bedāhten dō
waz in ir trüren tōhte :
sō man ir doch niht enmōhte 890
benemen ir willen unde ir muot.

so enwære in niht alsō guot
 sō daz sī irs wol gunden,
 wan sī doch niht enkunden
 ir niemer werden āne baz;
 enpfiegen sī der rede haz,
 ez möhte in umbe ir herren
 vil harte wol gewerren,
 und verviengen anders niht dā mite.
 mit vil willeclīchem site
 sprāchen sī beide dō
 daz sī der rede wāren frō.
 Des fröute sich diu reine maget.
 dō ez vil kūme was getaget
 dō gie sī dā ir herre slief.
 sīn trūtgemahеле ime rief,
 sī sprach 'herre, slāfent ir?'
 'nein ich, gemahеле, sage mir,
 wie bistū hiute alsō fruo?'
 'herre, dā twinget mich derzuo
 der jāmer iuwerr siecheit.'
 er sprach 'gemahеле, daz ist dir leit:
 daz erzeigest du an mir wol,
 als ez dir got vergelten sol.
 nune mag es dehein rāt sīn.'
 'entriuwen, lieber herre mīn,
 iuwer wirt vil guot rāt.
 sīt ez alsus umbe iuch stāt
 daz man iu gehelfen mac,
 ichn gesūme iuch niemer tac.
 herre, ir hānt uns doch gesaget,
 ob ir hetent eine maget
 diu gerne den tōt durch iuch lite,
 dā soltent ir genesen mite.
 diu wil ich weizgot selbe sīn:
 iuwer leben ist nützer dan daz mīn.'

895

900

905

910

915

920

925

Dō gnādeṭe ir der herre
 des willen harte verre.
 und ervollēten im diu ougen
 von jāmer alsō tougen. 930
 er sprach 'gemahele, ja ist der tōt
 iedoch niht ein senftiu nōt,
 als dū dir lihte hāst gedāht.
 dū hāst mich des wol innen brāht,
 möhtestū, dū hülfeṣt mir. 935
 des genüegeṭ mich wol von dir.
 ich erkenne dīnen sūezen muot:
 dīn wille ist reine unde guot.
 ichn sol ouch niht mē von dir gern. *ichn sol ouch niht mē von dir gern*
 dū maht mich des niht wol gewern. 940
 daz dū dā gesprochen hāst.
 die triuwe die du an mir begāst,
 die sol dir vergelten got.
 ditz wære der lantliute spot,
 swaz ich mich für dise stunde
 arzenīen underwunde, 945
 und mich doch niht vervienge
 wan als ez doch ergienge.
 gemahēle, dū tuost als diu kint
 diu dā gāhes muotes sint: 950
 swaz den kumet in den muot,
 ez sī übel oder guot,
 dar zuo ist in allen gāch,
 und geriuwet sī sēre dar nāch.
 gemahēle, alsō tuost ouch dū. 955
 der rede ist dir ze muote nū:
 der die von dir nemen wolte,
 sō manz danne enden sölte,
 so geriuwez dich vil lihte doch.
 und daz sī sich ein teil noch 960
 baz bedāhte des bat er.

er sprach 'dīn muoter und dīn vater
die enmugen dīn niht wol enbern.

ich sol ouch niht ir leides gern

die mir ie gnāde tāten.

965

swaz sī dir beide rāten,

liebe gemahle, daz tuo.'

hie mite lachete er dar zuo,

wan er lützel sich versach

daz doch sider dō geschach.

970

Sus sprach er zuo der guoter.

der vater und diu muoter

sprāchen 'lieber herre,

ir hānt uns vil verre

geliebet und geēret:

975

daz enwære niht wol bekēret,

wir engültenz iu mit guote.

unser tohter ist ze muote

daz sī den tōt durch iuch dol:

des gunne wir ir harte wol.

980

ez ist hiute der dritte tac

daz sī uns allez ane lac

daz wir ir sīn gunden:

nū hāt sīz an uns funden.

nū lāze iuch got mit ir genesen:

985

wir wellen ir durch iuch entwesen.'

Do im sīn gemahle dō bōt

für sīnen siechtuom ir tōt

und man ir ernest ersach,

dō wart dō michel ungemach

990

und jæmerlīch gebærde.

manc mislīchiu beswærde

huop sich dō under in,

zwischen dem herren unde in drin.

ir vater unde ir muoter die

995

erhuoben michel weinen hie:

des weinens tet in michel nōt
 umb ir vil lieben kindes tōt.
 nū begunde ouch der herre
 gedenken alsō verre 1000

an des kindes triuwe,
 und begreif in ein riuwe,
 daz er sēre weinen began,
 und zwīvelte vaste dran
 weder ez bezzer getān 1005
 möhte sīn oder verlān.

von vorhten weinte ouch diu maget:
 sī wānde er wære dran verzaget. *from waenen*
 sus wārens alle unfrō.

sī gerten keines dankes dō. 1010

Enb. Ze jungest dō bedāhte sich
 ir herre, der arme Heinrich,
 und begunde sagen in
 grōze gnāde allen drin
 der triuwen und des guotes 1015

(diu maget wart rīches muotes
 daz ers gevolgete gerne),
 und bereitē sich ze Sālerne
 sō er schiereste mohte. *must geschicklich*

swaz ouch der megede tohte, *gute?* 1020

daz wart vil schiere bereit:
 schoeniu pfert und rīchiu kleit,
 diu sī getruoc nie vor der zīt:

(hermin unde samīt,
 den besten zobel den man vant, *schon geschicklich* 1025
 daz was der megede gewant.

Nū wer möhte volgesagen *totte fully*
 die herzeriuwe und daz klagen,
 der muoter grimmigez leit
 und ouch des vater arbeit? 1030
 ez wære wol under in beiden

ein jæmerlîchez scheiden,
 dō sī ir liebez kint von in
 gefrumten sō gesundez hin
 niemer mē ze sehenne in den tōt, 1035
 wan daz in senftet ir nōt
 diu reine gotes güete,
 von der doch daz gemüete
 ouch dem jungen kinde quam *Kom*
 daz ez den tōt gerne nam. 1040
 ez was āne ir rāt *komen*:
 dā von wart von ir herzen genomen
 alliu klage und swære,
 wan ez anders wunder wære
 daz in ir herze niht zerbrach. 1045
 ze liebe wart ir ungemach,
 daz sī dar nāch deheine nōt
 liten umbe ir kindes tōt.

IV

WALTHER VON DER VOGELWEIDE.

The exact dates of his birth and death are unknown. His chief poems were written between the years 1187 and 1230.

The best edition of his works is: Walther von der Vogelweide, herausgegeben und erklärt von W. Wilmanns, Halle, 1883 (2nd edit.).

patristic
 Ir sult sprechen: 'willekomen!'
 der iu mære bringet, daz bin ich.
 Allez daz ir habt vernomen,
 daz ist gar ein wint: nū frāget mich.
 Ich wil āber miete:
 wirt mīn lōn iht guot,
 sō sage ich iu vil lichte, daz iu sanfte tuot.
 seht, waz man mir ēren biete.

Ich wil tiuschen frouwen sagen
solhiu mære, daz si destē baz 10

Al der werlte suln behagen:
āne grōze miete tuon ich daz.

Waz wold' ich ze lōne?
si sint mir ze hēr; *quod. ehre*
sō bin ich gefūge und bite si nihtes mēr 15
wan daz si mich grēzen schōne.

Ich hān lande vil gesehen
unde nam der besten gerne war: *gerne*

Übel mūze mir geschehen,
kūnde ich ie mīn herze bringen dar, 20

Daz im wol gevallen
wolde fremeder site.
nū waz hülfe mich, ob ich unrehte strite?
tiuschiu zuht gāt vor in allen.

Von der Elbe unz an den Rīn 25
und her wider unz an Ungerlant

Mūgen wol die besten sīn,
die ich in der werlte hān erkant.

Kan ich rehte schouwen
guot gelāz und līp, 30
sam mir got, sō swüere ich wol, daz hie diu wīp
bezzer sint danne ander frouwen.

Tiusche man sint wol gezogen,
rehte als engel sint diu wīp getān.

Swer si schiltet, derst betrogen: 35
ich enkan sīn anders niht verstān.

Tugent und reine minne,
swer die suoehen wil,
der sol komen in unser lant: da ist wūne vil:
lange mūze ich leben dar inne! 40

Einst und Jetzt

Elegie

2.

wol

wo

Owē war sint verschwunden alliu mīniu jār!
 ist mir mīn leben getroumet oder ist ez wār?
 daz ich ie wānde, daz iht wære, was daz iht?
 dar nāch hān ich geslāfen und enweiz es niht.

Nū bin ich erwachet, und ist mir unbekant,
 daz mir hie vor was kündic als mīn ander hant.
 liut unde lant, dā ich von kinde bin erzogen,
 die sint mir fremde worden, reht' als ez sī gelogen:

Die mīne gespilen wāren, die sint träge und alt;
 bereit^{et} ist daz velt, verhouwen ist der walt:
 wan daz daz wazzer flūzet, als ez wilent flōz,
 für wār ich wānde mīn ungelücke würde grōz,
 mich grūezet maneger träge, der mich bekande ē wol.
 diu werlt ist allenthalben ungenāden vol.
 als ich gedenke an manegen wūnneclichen tac,
 die sint mir enpfallen gar als in daz mer ein slac,
 iemer mēre owē!

Owē wie jæmerliche junge liute tuont!
 den vil unriuweclīche ir gemüete stuont,
 die kunnen niuwan sorgen: owē wie tuont si sō?
 swar ich zer werlte kēre, dā ist nieman frō:

Tanzen unde singen zergāt mit sorgen gar.
 nie kristenman gesach sō jæmerlichiu jār.
 nū merket, wie den frouwen ir gebende stāt,
 die stolzen ritter tragent dörperliche wāt.

Uns sint unsenfte brieve her von Rōme komen,
 uns ist erlobet trüren und frōude gar benomen.
 daz müet mich inneclīchen (wir lebten ē vil wol),
 daz ich nū für mīn lachen weinen kiesen sol.
 diu wilden vogellīn betrüebet unser klage:
 waz wunders ist, ob ich dā von vil gar verzage?

discouraged

nir

45

50

55

65

70

How could they do it?

pass away

deliberate

more clothes

waz spriche ich tumber man durch minen böesen zorn?
 swer dirre wünne volget, der hāt jene dort verlorn
 iemer mēre, owē!

Owē wie uns mit süezen dingen ist vergeben! 75
 ich sihe die gallen mitten in dem honege sweben. *lowe*
 diu werlt ist ūzen schöne, wīz, grūen' unde rōt
 und innen swarzer vārwe, vīnster sam der tōt.

Swen si nū habe verleitet, der schouwe sīnen trōst:
 er wirt mit swacher buoze grōzer sūnde erlōst. 80
 dar an gedenket, ritter! ez ist iuwer dinc;
 ir traget die liechten helme und manegen herten rinc, *stiel*

Dar zuo die vesten schilte und diu gewīhten swert. *hallowed*
 wolte got, wær ich der sigenūnfte wert, *victor*
 sō wolte ich nōtic^o man verdienen richen solt. *nicht ruwand* 85
 joch meine ich niht die huoben noch der hēren golt: *acre*
 ich wolte selbē krōne ēweclichen tragen;
 die möhte ein soldenære^o mit sime sper bejagen. *win*
 möht ich die lieben reise gevaren über sē,
 sō wolte ich denne singen 'wol' und niemer mēre 'owē,' 90
 niemer mēre 'owē!'

3. *Unanglück*

Dō der sumer komen was
 und die bluomen durch daz gras
 wūnneclīche ensprungen,
aldā die voge le sungē, *Chaucer* 95
 dār kom ich gegangen
 an einen anger langen, *meadow*
 dā ein lüter brunne entspranc;
 vor dem walde was sīn ganc,
 dā diu nahtegale sanc. 100

Bī dem brunnen stuont ein boum,
 dā gesach ich einen troum.
 ich was zuo dem brunnen
 gegangen von der sunnen,

daz diu linde mære *Dark tower*
 den ktielen schaten bære.
 bī dem brunnen ich gesaz:
 mīner swære ich gar vergaz,
 schiere entslief ich umbe daz.

105

rec. 120
 Dō bedūhte mich zehant, *on the spot*
 wie mir dienten elliu lant,
 wie mīn sēle wære
 ze himel āne swære
 und der lip hie solte
 gebāren swie er wolte.
 dā enwas mir niht ze wē.
 got der waldes *(was)* swie'z ergē:
 schoener troum enwart nie mē.

110

115

Gerne sliefe ich iemer dā,
 wan ein unsæligiu krā,
 diu begonde schriēn.
 daz alle krā gedien
 also ich in des gūnne!
 si nam mir michel wūnne.
 von ir schrienne ich erschrac:
 wan daz dā niht steines lac,
 sō wær' ez ir suontac. *day of judgment*

120

125

Wan ein wunderaltez wīp
 diu getrōste mir den lip,
 die begonde ich eiden. *plage*
 nū hāt si mir bescheiden *see*
 waz der troum bediute.
 daz merken^x wise liute;
 zwēne und einer daz sint drī;
 dannoch seite si mir dā bī,
 daz mīn dūme ein vinger sī.

130

135

^x
 Subj.

The Election
Contest

4. Gefährdetes
Geleit.

Ich saz üf eime steine
und dahte bein mit beine; *concealed*
dar üf satzt ich den ellenbogen;
ich hete in mīne hant gesmogen *reflectedly* 140
daz kinne und ein mīn wange:
dō dāhte ich mir vil ange, *carefully*
wie man zer werlte solte leben.

no action
deheinen rāt kond ich gegeben,
wie man driu dinc erwürbe, *gained* 145
der keinez niht verdürbe.

knows frequently
diu zwei sint ēre und varnde guot, *charitable*
daz dicke einander schaden tuot; *harm*
daz dritte ist gotes hulde, *grace*
der zweier übergulde. 150

desire
die wolte ich gerne in einen schrīn; *store*
jā leider des en^mac niht sīn,
daz guot und werltlich ēre
und gōtes hulde mēre *acquire*
zesamene in ein herze komen. 155

but just
stīg' unde wege sint in benomen: *taken away*
decent
untriuwe is in der sāze, *ambush*
lies about
gewalt vert üf der strāze, *road*
useless
frīde unde reht sint sēre wunt. *fatal* 160

peace
diu driu enhabent geleites niht, *protector*
diu zwei enwerden ē gesunt. *hardly*

politician

5.

unleashed
Ich hörte ein wazzer diezen *torrent*
und sach die vische fliezen; *swimming*
ich sach swaz in der werlte was,
soot
velt unde walt, loup rōr und gras; *leaf* 165
creep
swaz kriuchet unde fluiget
und bein zer erden biuget, *creep*

daz sach ich unde sage iu daz:
der keinez lebet āne haz.

daz wilt und daz gewürme

170

die stritent starke stürme,

sam tuont die vogel under in;

wan daz sie habent einen sin:

sie diuhten sich ze nihte,

sie entschüefen starc gerihte:

175

sie kiesent künege unde reht,

sie setzent hēren unde kneht.

sō wē dir, tiuschiu zunge,

wie stēt dīn ordenunge,

daz nū diu mucke ir künic hāt

180

und daz dīn ēre alsō zergāt!

bekērā dich, bekēre!

die zirken sint ze hēre,

die armen künege dringent dich:

Philippe setze en weisen ūf und heiz sie treten hinder sich!

6.

Ich sach mit mīnen ougen

man unde wibe tougen,

dā ich gehōrte und gesach

swaz iemen tet, swaz iemen sprach.

ze Rōme hōrte ich liegen

190

und zwēne künege triegen.

dā von huop sich der meiste strit,

der ē was oder iemer sīt,

daz sich begonden zweien

die pfaffen unde leien.

195

daz was ein nōt vor aller nōt:

līp unde sēle lac dā tōt,

die pfaffen striten sēre:

doch wart der leien mēre.

diu swert sie legeten dernider 200
und griffen zuo der stōle wider:
sie bienen die sie wolten *harnisch*
und niuwet den sie solten.

dō stōrte man diu goteshūs.

for am Ich hōrte verre in einer klūs *clausur* 205
vil michel ungebære: *lamentation*
dā weinde ein klōsenære, *hermit*
er klagete gote sīniu leit:

‘ōwē, der bābest ist ze junc: hilf, hērrer, dīner Kristenheit!’

7.

Diu krōne ist elter dan der künec Philippes sī: 210
dā muget ir alle schouwen wol ein wunder bī,
wie s’ ime der smit sō ebene habe gemacht.
sīn keiserlīchez houbet zimt ir alsō wol,

daz sie ze rehte nieman guoter scheiden sol.

weithen ir dwederez daz ander niht enswachet. 215
of frow

sie liuhtent beide ein ander an, *bre an armant* *French*

daz edele gesteine wider den jungen man:

what die ougenweide sehent die fürsten gerne.
destitute

swer nū des rīches irre gē, 220

der schouwe, wem der weise ob sīme nacke stē:

der stein ist aller fürsten leitesterne.

8.

Mir ist verspart der sælden tor: *happiness*

dā stēn ich als ein weise vor, *orphan*

mich hilfet niht swaz ich dar an geklopfe.

wie möhte ein wunder grōezer sīn? 225

ez regent beidenthalben mīn,

daz mir des alles niht enwirt ein tropfe.

des fürsten milte ūz Ōsterrīche *generosity*

freut dem sūezen regen geliche

= request
metallic

beidiu liute und ouch daz lant.

230

er ist ein schoene wol gezieret heide, *heide*

dar abe man bluomen brichet wunder:

und bræche mir ein blat dar under

diu sîn vil milte rîchiu hant,

sō möhte ich loben die süezen ougenweide.

235

hie bī sī er an mich gemant. *minde*

9.

Ich hān mīn lēhen, al die werlt! ich hān mīn lēhen!

nū enfürhte ich niht den hornunc an die zēhen *hant*

und wil alle böese hērrēn destē minre vlēhen.

der edel künec, der milte künec hāt mich berāten, *minde*

240

daz ich den sumer luft und in dem winter hitze hān.

mīn' nāhgebūren dunke ich verre baz getān: *par*

sie sehent mich niht mēr an in butzen wīs, alsō sie tātē.

ich bin ze lange arm gewesen ān' mīnen danc.

ich was sō volle scheltens, daz mīn ātem stanc.

245

daz hāt der künec gemacht reine und dar zuo mīnen sanc.

10.

Ōwē hovelîchez singen,

daz dich ungefüege dōne *curse*

solten ie ze hove verdringen! *drise*

daz sie schiere got gehōene! *curse*

250

ōwē, daz dīn wirde alsō geliget, *disgrity*

ob des sint alle dīne friunde unfrō.

daz muoz eht sō sīn, nū sī alsō:

frō Unfuoge, ir habt gesiget.

Der uns freude wider bræhte,

diu reht und gefüege wære, *geling*

hei wie wol man des gedæhte,

swā man von im seite mære!

255

ez wær' ein vil hovelicher muot,
des ich iemer gerne wünschen sol. 260
frouwen unde hēren zæme ez wol:
ōwē daz ez nieman tuot!

Die daz ^{real} rehte singen stoerent,
der ist ungeliche mēre
danne die ez gerne hoerent. 265
des volg' ich der alten lēre:
ich enwil niht werben ze der mül; *beartige*
dā der stein sō riuschend' umbe gāt *M. d.*
und daz rat sō manegē unwīse hāt, *false tones*
merket wer dā harpfen stül! 270

Die sō frevellīchen schallent,
der muoz ich vor zorne lachen,
daz s' in selben wol gevallent
mit als ungefüegen sachen.
die tuont sam die frösche in eime sē, 275
den ir schrien alsō wol behaget, *please*
daz diu nahtegal dā von verzaget,
sō si gerne sunge mē.

Der unfuoge swīgen hieze,
waz man noch von freuden sunge, 280
und sie abe den bürgen stieze,
daz si dā die frōn iht twunge! *anbäre*
würden ir die grōzen hōve benomen,
daz wær' allez nāch dem willen mīn:
bīen gebūren lieze ich sie wol sīn, 285
dannan ist s' ouch here komen.

II.

post Der rīfe tet den kleinen vogelen wē,
daz sie niht ensungen.
nū hōrte ich s' aber wūnnecliche als ē:
nū ist diu heide entsprungen. 290

dā sach ich bluomen strīten wider den klē,
 weder ir lenger wære.
 mīner frouwen seite ich disiu mære.

Uns hāt der winter kalt und ander nōt
 vil getān ze leide.

295

ich wānde, daz ich iemer bluomen rōt
 sæhe an grüener heide.

injure

joch schāte ez guoten liuten, wære ich tōt,
 die nāch freuden rungen - *herb*
 und ie gerne tanzten unde sprungen.

300

Versūmde ich disen wūnneclīchen tac,
 sō wær' ich verwāzen *curved*
 und wære an freude ein angestlicher slac:
 dennoch müese ich lāzen *gentle*
 al mīne freude, der ich wilent pflac.
 got gesegen' iuch alle:
 wūnschet noch, daz mir ein heil gevalle.

305

that good fortune be mine.

12.

Wīp muoz ~~et~~ iemer sīn der wībe hōhste name
 und tiuret baz dan frouwe, als ich'z erkenne.

swā nū deheiniu sī, diu sich ir wīpheit schame,
 diu merke disen sanc und kiese denne.

310

under frouwen sint unwīp, *not worth the name*
 under wīben sint sie tiure:

wībes name und wībes lip

die sint beide vil gehiure. *charming person*

315

swie'z umb' alle frouwen var,

wīp sint alle frouwen gar.

zwīvellop daz hōenet, *dishonour*

als under wīlen frouwe: wīp dēst ein name der s'alle
 krōenet.

doubtful phrase

(prudence)

¹³
 Sō die bluomen ūz dem grase dringent,
 same sie lachen gegen der spileden sunnen, ³²⁰
 in einem meien an dem morgen fruō,
 und diu kleinen vogellin wol singent
 in ir besten wīse die sie kunnen,
 waz wünne mac sich dā genōzen zuo? ³²⁵
 ez ist wol halb ein himelrīche.
 suln wir sprechen, waz sich deme geliche,
 sō sage ich, waz mir dicke baz
 in mīnen ougen hāt getān,
 und tæte ouch noch, gesæhe ich daz. ³³⁰

Swā ein edeliu schœne frouwe reine
 wol gekleidet unde wol gebunden ^{garlanded}
 durch kurzewīle zuo vil liuten gāt,
 hovelīchen hōchgemuot, niht eine,
 umbe sehendē ein wēnic under stunden: ³³⁵
 alsam der sunne gegen den sternē stāt:
 der meie bringe uns al sīn wunder,
 waz ist dā sō wūnneclīches under
 als ir vil minneclīcher līp?
 wir lāzen alle bluomen stān, ³⁴⁰
 und kapfen an daz werde wīp.

Nū wol dan, welt ir die wārheit schouwen, ^{if you would}
 gēn wir zuo des meien hōchgezīte!
 der ist mit aller sīner krefte komen.
 seht an in und seht an werde frouwen, ³⁴⁵
 wederez daz ander überstrīte,
 daz bezzer spil ob ich daz habe genomen.
 ōwē der mich dā welen hieze,
 deich daz eine durch daz ander lieze,
 wie rehte schiere ich danne küre! ³⁵⁰
 hēr Meie, ir mūset merze sīn,
 ē ich mīne frouwen dā verlūre.

14.

Swie wol der heide ir manicvaltiu varwe stāt,
 sō wil ich doch dem walde jehen,
 daz er vil mēre wūnneclicher dinge hāt. 355
 noch ist dem velde baz geschehen.
 sō wol dir, sumer, sus getāner emzēkeit! (mīg)
 sumer, daz ich iemer lobe dīne tage,
 mīn trōst, sō troeste ouch mīne klage:
 ich sage dir, waz mir wirret: 360
 diu mir ist lieb, der bin ich leit.

Ich mac der guoten niht vergezzen noch ensol,
 diu mir sō vil gedanke nimet.
 die wīle ich singe, wil ich vinden iemer wol
 ein niuwe lop, daz ir gezimet. 365
 nū habe ir dīz fūr guot (sō lobe ich danne mē):
 ez tuot in den ougen wol, daz man sie siht,
 und daz man ir vil tugende giht,
 daz tuot wol in den ōren.
 sō wol ir des! sō wē mir, wē! 370

15.

In einen zwīvellichen wān
 was ich gesezzen und gedāhte,
 ich wolte von ir dienste gān,
 wan daz ein trōst mich wider brāhte.
 trōst mag ez rehte niht geheizen, ouwē des! 375
 ez ist vil kūme ein kleinez troestelīn,
 sō kleine, swenne ich'z iu gesage, ir spottet mīn;
 doch frōwet sich lützel ieman, er enwizze wes.

noone
 osune
 Mich hāt ein halm gemacht frō:
 er giht, ich sūle genāde vinden. 380
 ich maꝯ daz selbe kleine strō,
 als ich hie vore sach von kinden.

nū hœret unde merket, ob si'z denne tuo:

'si tuot, si entuot, si tuot, si entuot, si tuot.'

swie dicke ich'z tete, sō was ie daz endē guot.

385

daz trœstet mich: dā hœret ouch geloube zuo.

16

Nieman kan beherten

enforce

kindes zuht mit gerten:

den man z'ēren bringen mac,

dem ist ein wort als ein slac.

390

dem ist ein wort als ein slac,

den man z'ēren bringen mac:

kindes zuht mit gerten

nieman kan beherten.

Hüetet iuwer zungen,

395

daz zimt wol den jungen;

stōz den rigel für die tür,

lā kein böese wort dar für.

lā kein böese wort dar für,

stōz den rigel für die tür:

400

daz zimt wol den jungen,

hüetet iuwer zungen.

Hüetet iuwer ougen

offenbāre und tougen:

lāt sie guote site spehen

405

und die böesen übersehen;

und die böesen übersehen

lāt sie, guote site spehen:

offenbāre und tougen

hüetet iuwer ougen.

410

Hüetet iuwer ōren,

oder ir sīt tōren:

lāt ir böesiu wort dar in,
 daz gunēret iu den sin.
 daz gunēret iu den sin,
 lāt ir böesiu wort dar in,
 oder ir sīt tōren:
 hūetet iuwer ōren.

415

Hūetet wol der drīer
 leider alze frīer:
 zungen ougen ōren sint
 dicke schalchaft, z' ēren blint.
 dicke schalchaft, z' ēren blint
 zungen ougen ōren sint:
 leider alze frīer
 hūetet wol der drīer.

420

425

17

Junc man, in swelher aht dū bist,
 ich wil dich lēren einen list:
 dū lā dir niht ze wē sīn | nāch dem guote:
 lā dir'z ouch niht z'unmāere sīn.
 und volgest dū der lēre mīn,
 sō wis gewis, ez frumt dir an dem muote.
 die rede wil ich dir baz bescheiden.
 lāst dū dir'z ze sēre leiden,
 zergāt ez, so ist dīn freude tōt:
 wilt aber dū daz guot ze sēre minnen,
 dū maht verliesen sēle und ēre.
 dā von sō volge mīner lēre:
 leg' ūf die wāge ein rehte z lōt
 und wig ouch dar mit allen dīnen sinnen,
 als ez diu māze eht ie gebōt,

430

435

440

18

Die vāter hānt ir kint erzogen,
 dar an sie beide sint betrogen :
 sie brechent dicke Salomōnes lēre : *frequently*
 der sprichet, swer den besmen spar, 445
 daz der den sun versūme gar :
 des sint die ungebatten gar ān' ēre. *unthought of*
 hie vor dō was diu werlt sō schōene,
 nū ist sie worden alsō hōene. *haughty*
 des enwas niht wilent ē : *formerly* 450
 die jungen hānt die alten sō verdrungen.
 nū spottet alse dar der alten !
 ez wirt iu selben noch behalten.
in the year beitet unz iuwer jugent zergē :
 swaz ir nū tuot, daz rechent iuwer jungen, 455
 daz weiz ich wol und weiz noch mē.

19

Wer zieret nū der ēren sal ?
 der jungen ritter zuht ist smal, *training*
 sō pflegent die knehte gar unhōvescher dinge
 mit Worten und mit werken ouch. 460
 swer zūhte hāt, der ist ir gouch. *such*
 nemt war, wie gar unfuoge für sich dringe ! *how much*
 hie vor dō berte man die jungen, *conscience*
 die dā pflāgen frecher zungen ; *is making*
 nū ist ez ir werdekeit : *mark of excellence* 465
 sie schallent unde scheltent reine frouwen.
hies wē ir hiuten unde ir hāren,
 die niht kunnen frō gebāren *conduct themselves*
 sunder wibe herzeleit !
 dā mac man sūnde bī der schande schouwen, 470
 die maneger ūf sich selben leit.

20

fear Swer āne vorhte, hēre got,
 wil sprechen dīniu zehen gebot
 und brichet diu, daz ist niht rehtiu minne. *true love*
 dich heizet vater maneger vil: *many a man* 475
 swer mīn ze bruoder niht enwil,
 der sprichet starkiu wort ūz krankem sinne. *with us idea of man*
 wir wahsen ūz gelichem dinge:
does no good spīse frumet uns, diu wirt ringe, *it becomes consumed*
 sō si durch den munt gevert. *yes* 480
 wer kan den hēren von dem knehte scheiden
 swa er ir gebeine blōgez fūnde,
 und hāte er ir joch lebender kūnde, *in life*
 sō gewürme daz fleisch verzert?
 im dienen kristen, juden unde heiden, 485
 der elliu lebendiu wunder nert. *Reigns alive*

21

Ōwē daz wīsheit unde tugent,
 des mannes schōene noch sīn jugent
 niht erben sol, sō ie der līp erstirbet! *when you*
 daz mac wol klagen ein wīser man, 490
 der sich des schaden versinnen kan. *from a conception*
 Reinmār, waz guoter kunst an dir verdirbet!
 dū solt von schulden iemer des geniezen, *recognition*
 daz dich des tages wolte nie verdriezen, *free by*
 du'n spraches ie den frouwen wol und guoten wībes siten. 495
 des suln sie iemer danken dīner zungen.
 und hātest niht wan eine rede gesungen:
 'sō wol dir, wīp, wie reine ein nam!'; dū hātest an gestriten
 ir lobe, daz elliu wīp dir iemer gnāden solten biten.

fully
 Dēs wār, Reinmār, dū riuwes mich 500
 mīchels harter denne ich dich,
 obe dū lebtes unde ich wære erstorben.
 ich wil'z bī mīnen triuwen sagen:
 dich selben wil ich lützel klagen,
 ich klage dīn edelen kunst, daz s'ist verdorben. 505
 dū kundest al der werlte freude mēren,
 sō du'z ze guoten dingen woltest kēren.
unsp
fnt
 mich riuwet dīn wol redender munt und dīn vil stēzer sanc,
 daz der verdorben ist bī mīnen zīten.
 daz dū niht eine wīle mohtest bīten! 510
 sō leiste ich dir geselleschaft: mīn singen ist niht lanc.
 dīn sēle mīeze wol gevarn und habe dīn zunge danc.

ein "altmoge"
 is wohl
 eingelen

V

REINMAR.

Reinmar, often called Reinmar der Alte, was by birth an Alsatian. He spent many years of his active life as Court poet at Vienna, where he was extremely popular. Next to his rival Walther von der Vogelweide he was the most prolific and important lyrical poet of his period, cp. ll. 487-512, pp. 132-3. He died some time during the first decade of the thirteenth century. See Burdach, Reinmar der Alte und Walther von der Vogelweide, Leipzig, 1880, and Bartsch, Deutsche Liederdichter des zwölften bis vierzehnten Jahrhunderts, Stuttgart, 1879.

I

'Si koment underwīlen her
 die baz dā heime möhten sīn.
 Ein ritter des ich lange ger,
 bedæhte er baz den willen mīn,
 sō wære er z'allen zīten hie, 5
 als ich in gerne sæhe.
 owē des, waz suochent die
 die nīdent daz, ob iemen guot geschæhe?'

↑
 long

Mir ist geschehen daz ich niht bin
 langer vrō wan unz ich lebe. 10
 sī wundert wer mir schoenen sin
 und daz höhgemüete gebe
 daz ich zer werlte niht getar *here*
 ze rehte alsō gebären. *like*
 nie genam ich vrowen war, 15
 ich wære in holt die mir ze māze wären.

2

Ein rede der liute tuot mir wē:
 da enkan ich niht gedulteclichen zuo gebären.
 nu tuont si'z alle deste mē:
 sī frāgent mich ze vil von mīner frouwen jāren 20
 und sprechent welher tage sī sī,
 dur daz ich ir sō lange bin gewesen mit triuwen bī;
 sī jehent daz es möhte mich verdriezen.
 nu lā daz aller beste wīp
 ir zühtelōser vrāge mich geniezen. 25

3

say Sī jehent, der sumer der sī hie,
 diu wunne diu sī komen
 und daz ich mich wol gehabe als ē.
 nu rātet unde sprechet wie:
 der tōt hāt mir benomen *so much*
 daz ich niemer überwinde mē. *conquer my sorrow* 30
only waz bedarf ich wunneclīcher zīt,
 sīt aller vrōuden hērrē Liutpolt in der erde līt,
 den ich nie tac getrūren sach? *and*
not ez hāt diu werlt an ime verlorn 35
 daz ir an manne nie *was*
 sō jæmerlīcher schade geschach.

'Mir armen wībe was ze wol,
 dō ich gedāhte an in
 wie mīn heil an sīnem lībe lac. *centered on him*
 daz ich des nū niht haben sol, 40
 des gāt mit sorgen hin
 swaz ich iemer mē geleben mac.
 mīner wunnen spīegel derst verlorn
 den ich mir hete ze sumerlicher ougen weide erkorn, 45
 des muoz ich leider ænic sīn. *beruft*
 dō man mir seite er wære tōt,
 zehant wiel mir daz bluot
 von herzen uf die sēle mīn.

Die frōide mir verboten hāt 50
 mīns lieben hēren tōt
 alsō deich ir mēr enberen sol.
 sīt des nu niht mac werden rāt, *can be helped*
 ich in ringe mit der nōt,
 daz mīn klagedez herze ist jāmers vol, 55
 diu in iemer weinet, daz bin ich,
 wan er vil sælic man, jā trōste er wol ze lebenne mich.
 der ist nu hin: waz tōhte ich hie?
be wis ime genædic, hērre got,
 wan tugenthafter gast 60
 kam in dīn ingesinde nie.'

4

Ich welte uf guoter liute sage,
 und ouch durch mīnes herzen rāt
 ein wīp von der ich dicke trage
 vil manige nōt diu nāhe gāt. 65
 die swære ich z'allen zīten klage,
 wand ez mir kumberliche stāt.
 ich tet ir schīn den dienst mīn:
 wie möhte ein grōezer wunder sīn,
 daz sī mich des engelten lāt? 70

Ze rehter māze sol ein man
 beidiu daz herze und al den sin
 ze stæte wenden, ob er kan:
 daz wirt im lihte ein guot gewin.
 swem dā von ie kein leit bekan,
 der weiz wol wie'ch gebunden bin.
 ich gloube im wol, als er mir sol.
 von schulden ich den kumber dol:
 ich brāhte selbe mich dar in.

75

5

'Er hāt ze lange mich gemiten
 den ich mit triuwen nie gemeit.
 von sīner schulde ich hān erliten
 daz ich nie grøezer nōt erleit.
 sō lebt mīn līp nāch sīnem libe.
 ich bin ein wīp, daz im von wībe
 nie liebes mē geschach, swie mir von im geschæhe.
 mīn ouge in gerner nie gesach dann ich in hiute sæhe.

80

85

Mir ist vil liebe nu geschehen,
 daz mir sō liebe nie geschach.
 sō gerne hān ich sī gesehen
 daz ich sī gerner nie gesach.
 ich scheide ir muot von schwachem muote:
 sī ist sō guot, ich wil mit guote
 ir lōnen, ob ich kan, als ich doch gerne kunde.
 vil mēre frōiden ich ir gan dann ich mir selben gunde.

90

95

6

Wol mich lieber mære,
 diu ich hān vernomen,
 daz der winter swære
 welle ze ende komen.

kanen kūme ich des erbeiten mac,
for want ich fröide niht enpflac *and not like*
 sīt der kalte rīfe lac. 100

let — Mich enhazzet niemen,
 ob ich bin gemeit. *happy*
 Weiz got, tuot ez iemen, 105
 deist unsælekeit,
for wande ich schaden niht enkan. *do not know*
only swes ot sī mir wole gan, *gan*
 waz wil des ein ander man?

Solte ich mīne liebe 110
 bergen unde heln, *like*
 sō müest ich ze diebe
 werden unde steln.
 sinneclīch ich daz bewar.
 mīn gewerbe ist anderswar, *concerns* 115
 ich gē dannen oder dar.

Sō sī mit dem balle
 trībet kindes spot,
 daz's iht sēre valle,
 daz verbiete got. 120
 megde, lāt iur dringen sīn:
 stōzet ir mīn frouwelīn,
 so'st der schade halber mīn.

7

Ich sach vil wunneclīche stān
 die heide mit den bluomen rōt, 125
 der viol der ist wol getān:
 des hāt diu nahtegal ir nōt
 wol überwunden diu sī twanc.
 zergangen ist der winter lanc.
 ich hōrte ir sanc. 130

Dō ich daz grüne loup ersach,
 dō liez ich vil der swære mīn.
 von einem wibe mir geschach
 daz ich muoz iemer mēre sīn
 vil wunneclīchen wol gemuot. 135
 ez sol mich allez dunken guot
 swaz sī mir tuot.

Sī schiet von sorgen mīnen līp,
 daz ich dekeine swære hān.
 wan āne sī vier tūsent wīp 140
 dien heten's alle niht getān.
 ir gūete wendet mīniu leit.
 ich hān sī mir ze friunt bereit,
 swaz iemen seit.

Mir'n mac niht leides widerstān: 145
 des wil ich gar ān angest sīn.
 ergienge ez als ich willen hān,
 sō læge's an dem arme mīn.
 daz mir der schoenen wūrde ein teil,
 daz diuhte mich ein michel heil, 150
 und wære ouch geil.

Deich ir sō holdez herze trage,
 daz ist in sumelīchen leit.
 dar umbe ich niemer sō verzage:
 sī vliesent alle ir arebeit. 155
 waz hilfet sī ir arger list?
 si'n wizzen wie'z ergangen ist
 in kurzer frist.

8

Mīn ougen wurden liebes alsō vol,
 dō ich die minneclīchen ērst gesach, 160
 daz ez mir hiute und iemer mē tuot wol.
 ein minneclīchez wunder dō geschach:

sī gie mir alse sanfte dur mīn ougen
 daz sī sich in der enge niene stiez.
 in mīnem herzen sī sich nider liez: 165
 dā trage ich noch die werden inne tougen.

Lā stān, lā stān! waz tuost du, sælic wīp,
 daz du mich heimesuochest an der stat,
 dar sō gewaltecliche wībes līp
 mit starker heimesuoche nie getrat? 170
 genāde, frowe! ich mac dir niht gestrīten.
 mīn herze ist dir baz veile danne mir:
 ez solde sīn bī mir, nu'st ez bī dir:
 des muoz ich ūf genāde lōnes bīten.

9

Ze frōiden nāhet alle tage 175
 der werlte ein wunneclīchiu zīt,
 ze senfte maniges herzen klage
 die nu der swære winter gīt.
 von sorge ich dicke sō verzage,
 swenn alsō jāmerliche līt 180
 diu heide breit. daz ist mir leit.
 diu nahtegal uns schiere seit
 daz sich gescheiden hāt der strīt.

10

Sō wol dir, wīp, wie reine ein nam!
 wie sanfte er doch z'erkennen und ze nennen ist! 185
 ez wart nie niht sō lobesam,
 swā du'z an rehte güete kērest, sō dū bist.
 dīn lop mit rede nieman wol volenden kan.
 swes dū mit triuwen pfligest wol, der ist ein sælic man
 und mac vil gerne leben. 190
 dū gīst al der werlte hohen muot:
 maht dū ouch mir ein wēnic freude geben?

ULRICH VON LICHTENSTEIN.

Ulrich von Lichtenstein came of a better-class Styrian family, and was born about the year 1200 and died in 1275 or 1276. He was one of the best representatives of the later Court lyrical poets. For editions of his works, see Lachmann, *Ausgabe der Dichtungen Ulrichs von Lichtenstein*, Berlin, 1841; Bechstein, *Ulrichs von Lichtenstein Frauendienst*, Leipzig, 1887. The following extracts are taken from Bartsch, *Deutsche Liederdichter des zwölften bis vierzehnten Jahrhunderts*, Stuttgart, 1889.

I

Ein tanzwîse, und ist diu vierde wîse.

In dem walde stûeze dôene
singent kleiniu vogellin.
an der heide bluomen schoene
blûejent gegen des meien schîn.
alsô blûet mîn hōher muot
mit gedanken gegen ir gûete,
diu mir rîchet mîn gemûete
sam der troum den armen tuot.

5

Ez ist ein vil hōch gedinge
den ich gegen ir tugenden trage,
daz mir noch an ir gelinge,
daz ich sælde an ir bejage.
des gedingen bin ich vrō.
god geb' daz ich'z wol verende,
daz sie mir den wān iht wende
der mich freut sō rehte hō.

10

15

Sie vil stûeze, valsches āne,
vrī vor allem wandel gar,
lāze mich in liebem wāne
die wil ez niht baz envar;
daz diu vreude lange wer,
daz ich weinens iht erwache,
daz ich gegen dem trōste lache
des ich von ir hulden ger.

20

Wünschen unde wol gedenken 25
dēst diu meiste vreude mīn.
des sol mir ir trōst niht wenken,
sie enlāze mich ir sīn
mit den beiden nāhen bī,
sō daz sie mit willen gunne 30
mir von ir sō werder wunne
daz sie sælic immer sī.

Sælic meie, du aleine
trœstest al die welde gar.
du und al diu werlt gemeine 35
vreut mich min dann umb ein hār.
wie möht' ir mir vreude geben
āne die vil lieben guoten?
von der sol ich trōstes muoten;
wan ir trōstes muoz ich leben. 40

2

Ein sincwīse, und ist diu sibende wīse.

Wē war umbe sul wir sorgen?
vreude ist guot.
von den wīben sol man borgen
hōhen muot.
wol im der in kan gewinnen 45
von in! der'st ein sælic man.
freude sol man durch sie minnen,
wan dā līt vil ēren an.

Wir suln tanzen singen lachen
durch diu wīp. 50
dā mit mac ein man gemachen
daz sīn līp

wirdet wert, ob er mit triuwen
 dienet guoter wībe gruoꝝ.
 swen sīn dienst wil geriuwen,
 dem wirt selten kumbers buoꝝ.

55

Mit dem wazzer man daz fiuwer
 leschet gar :
 vinster ist der sunnen tiuwer.
 beidiu wār
 sint diu mære : ir hœret mære.
 habet für wār ūf mīnen līp :
 rehten man von herzen sēre
 scheidet nieman wan diu wīp.

60

Owē owē, frowe Minne,
 mir ist wē.
 nu grif her wie sēre ich brinne.
 kalder snē
 müeste von der hitze brinnen
 diu mir an dem herzen līt.
 kanstu, Minne, triuwe minnen,
 sō hilfestu mir enzīt.

65

70

3

Daz ist ein ūzreise.

Wil iemen nāch ēren die zīt wol vertriben,
 ze sælden sich kēren, bī freuden beliben,
 der diene ze flīze mit triuwen vil schōne
 nāch der minne lōne : der ist sūeꝛe, reine,
 vil guot und aleine den guoten gemeine.

75

Swer volget dem schilde, der sol ez enblanden
 dem libe, dem guote, dem herzen, den handen.
 des lōnet vil hōhe mit guotem gewinne
 diu vil werde Minne : diu gīt freud' und ēre.
 wol ir sūeꝛen lēre ! sie kan troesten sēre.

80

Der schilt wil mit zühten vil baltlichez ellen :
 er hazzet, er schiuhet Schand' und ir gesellen.
 got des niht enwelle daz man bī im vinde 85
 sō swachlich gesinde, er wil daz die sīnen
 ūf ēre sich pīnen, in tugenden erschīnen.

Erg' unde unfuoge und unfuore diu wilde
 gezimt niht dem helme und touc niht dem schilde.
 der schilt ist ein dach daz niht schande kan decken. 90
 sīn blic tæt' enblecken an ēren die weichen,
 von vorhten erbleichen: diu varwe ist ir zeichen.

Höchgemuote frouwen, ir stült wol gedenken :
 getriuwen gesellen vil stæte āne wenken
 den minnet, den meinet, mit herzen, mit muote, 95
 daz in iwer huote behalte, behüete
 mit liebe, mit güete, vrī vor ungemüete.

Sie ist āne schulde mir hazlich erbolgen
 der ich ze dienste dem schilde wil volgen.
 nu hān ich für zürnen noch für herzen sēre 100
 niht ander schilt mēre wan den tröst aleine,
 daz ich sie baz meine dann ie wīp deheine.

Gein ir langen kriege setz' ich mīn gedulde:
 sō stē gein ir hazzē ze wer mīn unschulde.
 mīn wer gein den valschen daz sol sīn mīn triuwe 105
 vil süeze āne riuwe: mīn kampflīch gewæte
 für ir nīdetæte daz sol sīn mīn stæte.

4

Ditz ist der leich.

Got fūege mir'z ze guote:
 ich bin noch in dem muote
 daz ich wil guoten wīben 110
 mit dienest āne valschen muot immer bī belīben.
 dā von rāt' ich einen rāt
 der allen wol gemuoten mannen tugentlichen stāt.

Ich rāt' iu, ēre gerende man,
 mit triuwen, als ich beste kan : 115
 ob ir welt werende freude hān,
 sō sīt den wīben undertān
 mit triwen āne valschen muot.
 ir gūete ist alsō rehte guot,
 swer in mit triwen dienest tuot, 120
 den kunnen sie wol machen frō.
 der werlde heil gar an in līt :
 ir gūete ist freuden hōchgezīt,
 ir schōene sō vil freuden gīt,
 dā von diu herze stīgent hō. 125

Werdekeit
 sunder leit
 kunnen sie wol friunden geben.
 swem sō sī
 witze bī, 130
 der sol nāch. ir hulden streben
 unde zinsen in sīn leben :
 daz rāte ich ūf die triwe mīn.
 swer ēren sælic welle sīn
 und rīche an hōhem muote, 135
 der sol mit triwen guotiu wīp
 reht minnen als sīn selbes līp.
 vil guot vor allem guote
 ist der wībe gūete, unde ir schōene schōene ob aller
 schōene.
 ir schōene ir gūete ir werdikeit ich immer gerne krōene.
 an ir schōene und an ir gūete stāt mīn heil und ouch
 mīn wunne.
 wær' guoter wībe schōene niht, wie selten ich gewunne
 deheinen ēren gernden muot.
 wol mich daz sie sint alsō guot,
 daz man hāt von ir gūete 145
 sō hōhen trōst fūr senediu leit.

ir schoene, ir güete, ir werdikeit
gīt mir vil hōch gemüete.

Mīn muot von wīben hōhe stāt.
waz danne ob mir ir einiu hāt 150
erzeiget hōhe missetāt?
dēswär des mac wol werden rāt.

Waz sie gegen mir hāt getān,
daz wil ich gerne wizzen lān
mit zūhten, als ich beste kan, 155
ūf genāde guotiu wīp.
ich hān ir driu und zehen jār
gedienet sunder wenken gar,
bī mīnen triwen, daz ist wār,
daz in der zīt mīn seneder līp 160
nie gewan
sölhen wān,
des mīn stāte wurde kranc.
al mīn gir
was gein ir 165
sleht mit triwen āne wanc.
nu vert entwer ir habedanc
reht als ein rat daz umbe gāt
und als ein marder den man hāt
in eine lin gebunden. 170
kund' ich als sie unstāte sīn,
sō hæt' ich nāch dem willen mīn
ān sie ein frowen funden.

Ē daz ich mīn ritterliche stāte bræch' an guoten wīben
ich wold' ē immer valscher wībe hulde vrī belīben. 175
ich muoz in der stāten wībe dienest sunder lōn verderben
oder ich muoz ir stāten herzen liebe alsus erwerben
daz ich gewenke nimmer wanc
von in. ir hōhen habedanc,

und mag ich den erringen, 180
 sō hān ich allez daz ich wil,
 stüez' ougen wunne, herzen spil,
 vil wunne an allen dingen.

Nu waz bedarf mīn seneder līp
 genāden mēr, ob ich ein wīp 185
 ze frowen vinde alsō gemuot,
 diu sich vor wandel hāt behuot
 und niht wan daz beste tuot?
 der sol mīn dienst sīn bereit
 immer mē, 190
 swie'z ergē,
 sunder valsch mit stæतिकeit.
 dā von gewinne ich werdikeit
 und alsō freuderīchen sīn,
 des ich getiuret immer bin 195
 an aller hande dingen.

Vind' ich sie, ich sol sō ritterlīchen nāch ir hulden
 ringen.
 daz mir von ir stæतिकeit muoz hō an ir gelingen.
 sie muoz abr ūf die triwe mīn
 gar vrī vor allem wandel sīn, 200
 diech mēr mich lāze twingen
 und ouch in kumber bringen.
 jā gehoeret man mich nimmer mē
 deheines valschen wībes lop gesprechen noch gesingen.

5

In dem lufte stüezem meien, 205
 sō der walt gekleidet stāt,
 sō siht man sich schōne zweien
 allez daz iht liebes hāt,
 unde ist mit ein ander vrō.
 daz ist reht: diu zīt wil sō. 210

Swā sich lieb ze liebe zweiet,
hōhen muot diu liebe gīt.
in der beider herzen meiet
ez mit vreuden alle zīt.
trūrens wil diu liebe niht,
swā man lieb bī liebe siht.

215

Swā zwei lieb ein ander meint
herzenlichen āne wanc
und sich beidiu sō vereinent
daz ir liebe ist āne kranc,
die hāt got zesamne geben
ūf ein wunneclīchez leben.

220

Stætiu liebe heizet minne.
liebe, minne, ist al ein :
die kan ich in mīnem sinne
niht gemachen wol zuo zwein.
liebe muoz mir minne sīn
immer in dem herzen mīn.

225

Swā ein stætez herze vindet
stæte liebe, stæten muot,
dā von al sīn trūren swindet.
stætiu liebe ist alsō guot
daz sie stæte freude gīt
stætem herzen alle zīt.

230

Möhte ich stæte liebe vinden,
der wold' ich sō stæte sīn
daz ich dā mit überwinden
wolde gar die sorge mīn.
stæter liebe wil ich gern
unde unstæte gar verbern.

235

240

Disiu liet diu heizent vrowen tanz:
 diu sol niemen singen, er'n sī vrō.
 swer mit zūhten treit der freuden kranz,
 und dem sīn muot stāt von wīben hō,
 dem erloube ich sie ze singen wol: 245
 blīdeclīchen man sie tanzen sol.

Trūren ist ze wāre niemen guot
 wan dem einen der sīn sūnde klaget,
 hōhen lop erwirbet hōher muot.
 guoten wīben hōchmuot wol behaget: 250
 dā von wil ich immer mēre sīn
 hōchgemuot durch dich, guot vrowe mīn.

Vreude gibt mir dīn wol redender munt,
 hōhen muot dīn reine senfte sit':
 vreuden tou mir ūz des herzen grunt 255
 kumt von dir in elliu mīniu lit.
 got hāt sīnen vlīz an dich geleit,
 dā von dīn lop ēren krōne treit.

Liehtiu ougen, dā bī brūne brā,
 hāstu und zwei rōtiu wāngelīn. 260
 schōene bistu hie und schōene dā.
 brūn rōt wīz, der drīer varwe schīn
 treit dīn hōchgeborner schōener līp.
 tugende hāstu vil, guot wīplīch wīp.

Daz du alsō manege tugende hāst, 265
 dā von bin ich alles trūrens vrī.
 sō du alsō schōeniu vor mir gāst,
 sō ist mir als ich in dem himel sī.
 got sō schōenen engel nie gewan
 den ich für dich wolde sehen an. 270

VII

DAS NIBELUNGEN-LIED.

B. Text.

ÄVENTIURE XVII.

WIE KRIEMHILT IR MAN KLAGTE UND WIE ER *bewaillet*
BEGRABEN WART.

The following extract is from Bartsch's edition, Leipzig, 1879.

anted Dō erbiten si der nahte und fuoren über Rīn.
von heleden kunde nimmer wirs gejaget sīn.
ein tier daz si dā sluogen, daz weinden edeliu kint.
jā muosen sīn engelten vil guote wīgande sint. *warrior* 4

efel Von grōzer übermüete muget ir hoeren sagen,
und von eislicher rāche. dō hiez Hagene tragen
Sifriden alsō tōten von Nibelunge lant
für eine kemenāten dā man Kriemhilde vant. 8

ie ihm Er hiez in tougenlichen legen an die türe,
daz sīn dā solde vinden so si gienge derftüre
hin zer mettīne ē daz ez wurde tac,
der diu vrouwe Kriemhilt vil selten keine verlac. 12

Man lūte dā zem münster nāch gewoneheit.
vrou Kriemhilt diu schoene wahte manige meit:
ein licht bat si ir bringen und ouch ir gewant.
dō kom ein kamerære dā er Sifriden vant. 16

Er sah in bluotes rōten: sīn wāt was elliū naz.
daz ez sīn herre wære, nine wesse er daz.
hin zer kemenāten daz licht truog an der hant
von dem vil leider mære diu vrouwe Kriemhilt ervant. 20

elling Dō si mit ir vrouwen zem münster wolde gān,
dō sprach der kamerære 'jā sult ir stille stān:
ez līt vor dem gademe ein ritter tōt erslagen.'
dō begonde Kriemhilt vil harte unmæzliche klagen. 24

protest
 Æ daz si rehte erfunde daz iz wære ir man,
 an die Hagenen vräge denken si began,
 wie er in solde vristen: dō wart ir erste leit.
 von ir was allen vreuden mit sīme tōde widerseit. 28

Dō seic si zuo der erden, daz si niht ensprach:
 die schœnen vreudelösen ligen man dō sach.
 Kriemhilde jāmer wart unmāzen grōz:
 do ęrschrē si nāch unkrefte daz al diu kemenāte erdōz. 32

Dō sprach daz gesinde: 'waz ob ez ist ein gast?'
 daz bluot ir ūz dem munde von herzen jāmer brast.
 dō sprach si 'ez ist Sīfrit, der mīn vil lieber man:
 ez hāt geraten Prūnhilt, daz ez hāt Hagene getān.' 36

Diu vrouwe bat sich wisen dā si den helt vant. *Wife*
 si huop sīn schœne houbet mit ir vil wīzen hant.
 swie rōt ez was von bluote, si het in schiere erkant.
 dō lac vil jāmerliche der helt von Nibelunge lant. 40

Dō rief vil trüereclīche diu küneginne milt:
 'owē mir mīnes leides! nu ist dir dīn schilt
 mit swerten niht verhouwen: du list ermorderōt.
 unt wesse ich wer iz het getān, ich riete im immer sīnen
 tōt.' 44

Allez ir gesinde klagete und scrē
 mit ir lieben vrouwen, wand' in was harte wē
 umb' ir vil edelen herren, den si dā heten verlorn.
 dō het gerochen Hagene harte Prūnhilde zorn. 48

Dō sprach diu jāmerhafte: 'ir sult hine gān
 und wecket harte balde die Sīfrides man,
 ir sult ouch Sigemunde mīnen jāmer sagen,
 ob er mir helfen welle den kūenen Sīfriden klagen.' 52

Dō lief ein bote balde da er si ligen vant, *king's man*
 die Sīfrides heledē von Nibelunge lant.
 mit den vil leiden mæren ir vreude er in benam.
 si wolden'z niht gelouben unz man daz weinen vernam. 56

Der bote kom ouch schiere dā der künic lac.
Sigemunt der herre des slāfes niht enpfac :
ich wān' sīn herze im sagete daz im was geschehen,
ern möhte sīnen lieben sun lebenden nimmer gesehen. 60

'Wachet, herre Sigemunt. mich bat nāch iu gān
Kriemhilt mīn vrouwe. der ist ein leit getān
daz ir vor allen leiden an ir herze gāt :
daz sult ir klagen helfen, wand' ez iuch sēre bestāt.' 64

Ūf rihte sich dō Sigemunt ; er sprach : 'waz sint diu leit
der schoenen Kriemhilde, diu du mir hāst geseit?'
der bote sprach mit weinen : 'ine kan iu niht verdagen :
jā ist von Niderlanden der küene Sīfrit erslagen.' 68

Dō sprach der herre Sigemunt : 'lāt daz schimpfen sīn
und alsō böesiu mære durch den willen mīn,
daz ir daz saget iemen daz er sī erslagen :
wand' ine kunde in nimmer unz an mīn ende verklagen.' 72

'Welt ir mir niht gelouben daz ir mich hœret sagen,
sō muget ir selbe hœren Kriemhilde klagen
unt allez ir gesinde den Sīfrides tōt.'
vil sēre erscrac dō Sigemunt : des gie im wærlīchen nōt. 76

Mit hundert sīnen mannen er von den betten spranc.
si zuhten zuo den handen diu scharpfen wāfen lanc,
si liefen zuo dem wuofe vil jāmerliche dan.
dō kōmen tūsent recken des küenen Sīfrides man. 80

Dō si sō jāmerliche die vrouwen hōrten klagen,
dō wānden sumeliche, si solden kleider tragen.
janē mohten si der sinne vor leide niht haben :
in wart vil michel swære in ir herzen begraben. 84

Dō kom der künec Sigemunt da ę Kriemhilde vant.
er sprach : 'owē der reise here in ditze lant.
wer hāt mich mīnes Kindes und iuch des iuwarn man
bī alsō guoten friunden sus mortlīch āne getān?' 88

‘Hey solde ich den bekennen,’ sprach daz vil edele wîp,
 ‘holt enwurde im nimmer mîn herze unt ouch mîn lîp :
 ich geriete im alsô leide daz die friunde sîn
 von den mînen schulden müesen weinende sîn.’ 92

Sigemunt der herre den fürsten umbeslôz,
 dô wart von sînen vriunden der jâmer alsô grôz,
 daz von dem starken wuofe palas unde sal
 und ouch diu stat ze Wormez von ir weinen erschal. 96

Donę kunde niemen trœsten daz Sîfrides wîp.
 man zôch ûz den kleidern den sînen schœnen lîp.
 man wuoch im sîne wunden unt leit’ in ûf den rē.
 dô was sînen liuten von grôzem jâmere wē. 100

Dô sprächen sîne recken von Nibelunge lant :
 ‘in sol immer rechen mit willen unser hant.
 er ist in dirre bûrge, der iz hât getân.’
 dô îlten nâch wâien alle Sîfrides man. 104

Die ûz erwelten degene mit schilden kômen dar,
 einlef hundert recken : die hete an sîner schar
 Sigemunt der herre. sînes sunes tût
 den wolde er gerne rechen : des gie im wêrlîchen nôt. 108

Sinę wessen wen si solden mit strîte dô bestân,
 sine tæten’z Gunther unde sine man,
 mit den der herre Sîfrit an daz gejegede reit.
 Kriemhilt sach si gewâfent : daz was ir grœzliche leit. 112

Swie michel wêr’ ir jâmer und swie starc ir nôt,
 dô vorhte si harte der Nibelunge tût
 von ir bruoder mannen, daz si ez understuont.
 si warnt’ si gütliche sô vriunde liebe vriunde tuont. 116

Dô sprach diu jâmers rîche : ‘mîn her Sigemunt,
 wes welt ir beginnen? iu ist niht rehte kunt.
 jâ hât der künic Gunther sô manigen küenen man :
 ir welt iuch alle vliesen, welt ir die recken bestân.’ 120

Mit ūf erbürten schilden in was ze strīte nōt,
 diu edel küneginne bat und ouch gebōt
 daz sīz mīden solden, die recken vil gemeit.
 dō sīz niht lāzen wolden, daz was ir wærlīchen leit. 124

Si sprach: 'herre Sigemunt, ir sult iȝ lāzen stān
unz ez sich baz gefüege: sō wil ich mīnen man
 immer mit iu rechen. der mir in hāt benomen,
 wirde ich des bewīset, ich sol im schedelīche komen. 128

Eȝ ist der übermüteten hie bī Rīne vil:
 dā von ich iu des strītes rāten niht enwil.
 si habent wider einen ie wol drīȝec man.
 nu lāȝ' in got gelingen als si umb uns gedienet hān. 132

Ir sult hie belīben, unt dolt mit mir diu leit;
 als iȝ tagen beginne, ir helde vil gemeit,
 sō helfet mir besarken den mīnen lieben man.
 dō sprāchen die degene: 'daz sol werden getān.' 136

Iu enkunde niemen daz wunder volsagen
 von rittern unt von vrouwen, wie man die hōrte klagen,
 sō daz man des wuofes wart in der stat geware.
 die edelen burgære die kōmen gāhende dare. 140

Si klagetē mit den gēsten, want in was harte leit.
 die Sīfrides schulde in niemen het geseit,
 durch waz der edele recke verlūre den sīnen līp.
 dō weinden mit den vrouwen der guoten burgære wīp. 144

Smide hiez man gāhen, wurken einen sarc,
 von silber und von golde, vil michel unde starc.
 man hiez in vaste spengen mit stahel, der was guot.
 dō was al den liuten harte trūrec der muot. 148

Diu naht was zergangen: man sagte ez wolde tagen.
 dō hiez diu edele vrouwe zuo den mūnster tragen
 Sīfrit den herren, ir vil lieben man.
 swaz er dā vriunde hēte, die sach man weinende gān. 152

Dō sī in zem münster brāhten, vil der glōken klanc.
 dō hōrt' man allenthalben vil maniges pfaffen sanc.
 dō kom der künic Gunther mit den sīnen man
 und ouch der grimme Hagene zuo dem wuofe gegān. 156

Er sprach: 'vil liebiu swester, owē der leide dīn,
 daz wir niht mohten āne des grōzen schaden sīn.
 wir müezen klagen immer den Sifrides lip.'
 'daz tuot ir āne schulde', sprach daz jāmerhafte wip. 160

'Wær' iu dar umbe leide, son wær' es niht geschehen.
 ir hetet mīn vergezzen, des mag ich wol jehen,
 da ich dā wart gescheiden von mīme lieben man.
 daz wolde got', sprach Kriemhilt, 'wær' iz mir selber
 getān.' 164

Si buten vaste ir lougen. Kriemhilt begonde jehen
 'swelher sich unschuldige, der lāze daz gesehen;
 der sol zuo der bāre vor den liuten gēn.
 dā bī mac man die wārheit harte schiere verstēn.' 168

Daz ist ein michel wunder: vil dicke ez noch geschiht,
 swā man den mortmeilen bī dem tōten siht,
 sō bluotent im die wunden: als ouch dā gescach.
 dā von man die schulde dā ze Hagenen gesach. 172

Die wunden vluzzen sēre alsam si tāten ē.
 die ē dā sēre klageten, des wart nu michel mē.
 dō sprach der künic Gunther 'ich wil'z iuch wizzē lān.
 in sluogen schāchære: Hagene hāt es niht getān.' 176

'Mir sint die schāchære', sprach si, 'vil wol bekant.
 nu lāze ez got errechen noch sīner vriunde hant.
 Gunther unde Hagene, jā habet ir iz getān.'
 die Sifrides degene heten dō ze strīte wān. 180

Dō sprach aber Kriemhilt: 'nu habt mit mir die nōt.'
 dō kōmen dise beide dā si in funden tōt,
 Gērnot ir bruoder und Giselher daz kint.
 in triuwen si in klageten mit den anderen sint. 184

Si weinden inneclîche den Kriemhilde man.
man solde messe singen: zuo dem münster dan
giengen allenthalben man wîp unde kint.
die sîn doch lihte enbären, die weinden Sîfriden sint. 188

Gërnôt und Giselher sprächen: 'swester mîn,
nu tröeste dich nâch tōde, als iz doch muoz sîn.
wir wellen dich's ergetzen die wîle unt wir geleben.'
done kunde ir tröst deheinen zer werlde niemen
gegeben. 192

Sîn sarc der was bereitet wol umbe'n mitten tac.
man huop in von der bäre dā er ûfe lac.
in wolde noch diu frouwe lāzen niht begraben.
des muosen al die liute michel arebeite haben. 196

In einen rîchen pfellel man den tōten want.
ich wæne man dā iemen āne weinen vant.
dō klagete herzenlîche Uote, ein edel wîp,
und allez ir gesinde den sînen wætlichen lip. 200

Dō man daz gehōrte, daz man zem münster sanc,
unt in gesarket hēte, dō huop sich grōz gedranc:
durch willen sîner sēle waz opfers man dō truoc!
er hete bî den vînden doch guoter vriunde genuoc. 204

Kriemhilt diu arme zir kameræren sprach:
'si suln durch mîne liebe liden ungemach, *alle fortune*
die im iht guotes gûnnen und mir wesen holt;
durch Sîfrides sēle sol man teilen sîn golt.' 208

Dehein kint was sō kleine daz witze mohte haben,
daz muose gēn zem opfer. ē ەر wurde begraben,
baz danne hundert messe man dā des tages sanc.
von Sîfrides vriunden wart dō grōzer gedranc. 212

Dō man dā hete gesungen, daz volc huop sich von dan.
dō sprach diu vrouwe Kriemhilt 'irn sult niht eine lān
hînte mich bewachen den ūz erwelten degen.
ez ist an sîme libe al mîn vreude gelegen. 216

Drī tage und drī nahte wil ich in lāzen stān,
 unz ich mich geniete mīns vil lieben man.
 waz ob daz got gebiutet daz mich ouch nimet der tōt?
 sō wære wol verendet mīn armer Kriemhilde nōt.' 220

Zen herbergen giengen die liute von der stat.
 paffen unde mūniche si beliben bat
 und allez sīn gesinde, daz des heldes pflac.
 si heten naht vil arge unt vil muelichen tac. 224

Ān ezzen und ān trinken beleip dā manic man.
 die ez nemen wolden, den wart daz kunt getān,
 daz man's in den vollen gæbe; daz schuof Sigemunt.
 dō was den Nibelungen vil michel arebeite kunt. 228

Die drīe tazezīte, sō wir hōeren sagen,
 die dā kunden singen, daz si muosen tragen
 vil der arebeite. waz man in opfers truoc!
 die vil arme wāren, die wurden rīche genuoc. 232

Swaz man vant der armen die es niht mohten hān,
 die hiez man doch zem opfer mit dem golde gān
 ūz sīn selbes kamere. do ̅er niht solde leben,
 umbe sīne sēle wart manic tūsent marc gegeben. 236

Urbor ūf der erden teilte s'in diu lant,
 swā sō man diu klōster und guote liute vant.
 silber unde wāte gap man den armen gnuoc.
 si tet dem wol geliche daz sim holden willen truoc. 240

An dem dritten morgen ze rehter messezīt
 sō was bī dem mūnster der kirchhof alsō wīt
 von den lantliuten weinens alsō vol:
 si dienden im nāch tōde als man lieben vriunden sol. 244

In den tagen vieren, man hāt gesaget daz,
 ze drīzec tūsent marken, oder dannoch baz,
 wart durch sīne sēle den armen dā gegeben.
 dō was gelegen ringe sīn grōzīu schoene und ouch sīn
 leben. 248

Dō gote dā wart gedienet und daz man vol gesanc,
mit ungefüegem leide vil des volkes ranc.
man hiez in ūz dem münster zuo dem grabe tragen.
die sīn ungern enbären, die sah man weinen unde
klagen. 252

Vil lūte scrīende daz liut gie mit im dan :
vrō enwas dā niemen, weder wīp noch man.
ē daz man in begrūbe, man sanc unde las :
hey waz guoter pfaffen ze sīner pifilde was! *funeral* 256

Ē daz zem grabe kōeme daz Sīfrides wīp,
dō ranc mit solhem jāmer der ir getriuwer līp,
daz man si mit dem brunnen vil dicke dā vergōz.
ez was ir ungemtete vil harte unmæzlichen grōz. 260

Ez was ein michel wunder daz si ie genas.
mit klage ir helfende manic vrouwe was.
dō sprach diu küneginne : 'ir Sīfrides man,
ir sult durch iuwer triuwe an mir genāde begān. 264

Lāt mir nāch mīme leide daz kleine līep geschehen, *grace*
daz ich sīn schoene houbet noch eines mūeze sehen.'
dō bat si's alsō lange mit jāmers sinnen starc,
daz man zebrechen muose den vil hērlichen sarc. 268

Dō brāhte man die vrouwen dā si in ligen vant.
si huop sīn schoene houbet mit ir vil wīzen hant ;
dō kuste s' alsō tōten den edelen ritter guot.
ir vil liechten ougen vor leide weineten bluot. 272

Ein jāmerlichez scheiden wart dō dā getān.
dō truoc man si von dannen : sine mohte niht gegān.
dō vant man sinnelōse daz hērliche wīp.
vor leide möht' ersterben der ir vil wūnneclīcher līp. 276

Dō man den edelen herren hete nu begraben,
leit āne māze sah man die alle haben
die mit im komen wāren von Nibelunge lant.
vil selten vroelichen man dō Sigemunden vant. 280

Dō was der etelicher der drier tage lanc
 vor dem grōzem leide niht az noch entranc.
 doch mohten si dem libe sō gar gewīchen niht:
 si nerten sich nāch sorgen, sō noch genuogen geschiht. 284

VIII

WOLFRAM VON ESCHENBACH.

Wolfram von Eschenbach was a native of Bavaria. Of his life little is known, not even the exact dates of his birth and death. He flourished in the latter part of the twelfth and early part of the thirteenth century, and was by far the best and most extensive representative of the Court epic poetry. He is best known by his *Parzival*, which contains 24,812 lines divided up into sixteen books. The following extract is taken from Book III. For editions of his works, see Lachmann, *Wolfram von Eschenbach*, Berlin, 1833, fifth edition, Berlin, 1891; Bartsch, *Wolfram's von Eschenbach Parzival und Titurel*, Leipzig, 1875.

Sich zōch diu frouwe jāmers balt *Courageous in grief*
 ūz ir lande in einen walt,
 zer wāste in Soltāne;
 niht durch bluomen ūf die plāne. *in low*
 ir herzen jāmer was sō ganz, *5*
 sinē kērtē sich an keinen kranz,
 er wāre rōt oder *val. yellow*
 sie brāhte dar durch flūhtesal
 des werden Gahmuretes kint.
 liute, die bī ir dā sint, *10*
 mūezen būwen unde riuten. *flow, uproot*
 sie kunde wol getriuten *blow, reached a good place*
 ir sun. ē daz sich der versan,
 ir volc sie gar für sich gewan: *arrived*
 ez wāre man oder wīp, *15*
 den gebōt sie allen an den lip, *Todeschütz*
 daz se iemer rīters wurden lūt.
 'wan *friesche* daz mīns herzen trūt, *treasure*

should be

welch rīters leben wære,
daz wurde mir vil swære. 20
nu habet iuch an der witze kraft,
und helt in alle rīterschaft.

Der site fuor angestliche vart. 1. *man*
der knappe alss verborgen wart *shun*
zer waste in Soltāne erzogen, *desert*
an küneclicher fuore betrogen; *exegit* *man of life* 25
ez ęnmöhte an eime site sīn:
bogen unde bölzelīn *crossbow*
die sneit er mit sīn selbes hant,
und schōz vil vogeles die er vant. 30
swenne ab er den vogel erschōz,
2 des schal von sange ē was sō grōz,
sō weinde er unde roufte sich,
an sīn hār kērt' er gerich. *vengeance*
sīn lip was klār unde fier: *bricht* 35
ūf dem plān am rivier
twuog er sich alle morgen.
er'n kunde niht gesorgen,
ez ęnwære ob im der vogelsanc,
die suoze in sīn herze dranc: 40
daz erstracte im sīniu prūstelīn.
al weinde er lief zer künegīn.
sō sprach sie 'wer hāt dir getān?
du wær' hin ūz ūf den plān.'
er'n kunde es ir gesagen niht, 45
als kinden līhte noch geschiht.
dem mære gienc sie lange nāch.
eins tages sie in kapfen sach *made at*
ūf die boume nāch der vogeles schal.
1 sie wart wol innen daz zeswal *swallow* 50
von der stimme ir Kindes brust.
des twang in art und sīn gelust.

frou Herzeloyde kēte ir haz
an die vogele, sine wesse um waz:

sie wolte ir schal verkrenken.

ir būliutē und ir enken

die hiez sie vaste gāhen, hāten

vogele wūrgen unde vāhen.

• die vogele wāren baz geriten:

etsliches sterben wart vermiten:

der bleip dā lebendic ein teil,

die sīt mit sange wurden geil.

55

60

Der knappe sprach zer künegin

‘waz wīzet man den vogelīn?’

er gerte in frides sāl zestunt.

sīn muoter kuste in an den munt:

diu sprach ‘wes wende ich sīn gebot,

der doch ist der hōehste got?

suln vogele durch mich frōude lān?’

der knappe sprach zer muoter sān

‘owē muoter, waz ist got?’

‘sun, ich sage dir’z āne spot.

er ist noch liehter denn’ der tag,

der antlitzes sich bewac

nāch menschen antlitze.

sun, merke eine witze,

und flēhe in umbe dīne nōt:

sīn triwe der werlde ie helfe bōt.

sō heizet einē der helle wirt:

der ist swarz, untriuwe in niht verbirt.

von dem kēr’ dīne gedanke,

und och von zwīvels wanke.’

sīn muoter unterschiet im gar

daz vinster unt daz licht gevar-

dar nāch sīn snelheit verre spranc.

er lertē den gabylōtes swanc,

65

70

75

80

85

intant
 dā mite er manegen hīrz erschōz:
 des sīn muoter und ir volc genōz.
 ez wære æber oder snē,
 dem wilde tet' sīn schiezen wē.
 nu hœret fremdiu mære.
 swenne er'rschōz daz swære,
 des wære ein mūk geladen genuoc,
 als unzerworht hin heim er'z truoc.

90

Eins tages gieng er den weideganc
 an einer halden, diu was lanc:
 er brach durch blates stimme 'en zwīc.
 dā nāhen bī im gienc ein stīc:
 dā hōrt' er schal von huofslegen.
 sīn gabylōt begund'er wegen:

95

dō sprach er 'waz hān ich vernomen?
 wan wolte et nu der tiuvel komen
 mit grimme zorneclīche!

100

den bestüende ich sicherlīche.
 mīn muoter freisen von im saget:
 ich wæne ir ellen sī verzaget.'

105

alsus stuont er in strītes ger.
 nu seht, dort kom geschūftet her
 drī rīter nāch wunsche var,
 von fuoze ūf gewāpent gar.

110

der knappe wānde sunder spot,
 daz ieslicher wære ein got.
 dō stuont ouch er niht langer hie,
 in'z phat viel er ūf sīniu knie.

lūte rief der knappe sān

115

'hilf, got: du maht wol helfe hān.'

der vorder zornes sich bewac,

dō der knappe im phade lac:

'dirre toersche Wāleise
 unsich wendet gāher reise.'

120

ein prīs den wir Beier tragen,
 muoz ich von Wāleisen sagen:
 die sint toerscher denne beiersch her,
 und doch bī manlicher wer.
 swer in den zwein landen wirt,
 gefuoge ein wunder an im birt.

125

Dō kom geleischieret
 und wol gezimieret
 ein rīter, dem was harte gāch.
 er reit in strīteclīchen nāch,
 die verre wāren von im komen:
 zwēn' rīter heten im genomen
 ein' frouwen in sīm' lande.
 den helt ez dūhte schande:
 in mūetē der juncfrouwen leit,
 diu jæmerliche vor in reit.
 dise drī wāren sīne man.
 er reit ein schoene kastelān:
 sīns schildes was vil wēnic ganz.
 er hiez Karnahkarnanz
 leh cons Ulterlec.

130

135

140

er sprach 'wer irret uns den wec?'
 sus fuor er zuome knappen sān.
 den dūhte er als ein got getān:
 er'n het' ē sō liehtes niht erkant.
 ūfēm towe der wāpenroc erwant.
 mit guldīn schellen kleine
 vor ietwederem beine
 wārn die stegreife erklenget
 unt ze rehter māze erlenget.
 sīn zeswer arm von schellen klanc,
 swar er'n bōt oder swanc.
 der was durch swertslege sō hel:
 der helt was gein prīse snel,

145

150

sus fuor der fürste rîche,
gezimiert wünnecliche. 155

Aller manne schoene ein bluomen kranz,
den vrägte Karnahkarnanz
'juncherre, sāht ir für iuch varen
zwēn' rîter die sich niht bewaren 160
kunnen an rîterlicher zunft?

sie ringent mit der nōtnunft
und sint an werdekeit verzaget:
sie fūerent roubes eine maget.'

der knappe wānde, swaz er sprach,, 165
ez wære got, als ime verjach
frou Herzeloyd' diu künegin,
do s'im underschiet den liechten schîn.

dō rief er lüte sunder spot
'nu hilf mir, helfe rîcher got.' 170
vil dicke viel an sîn gebet
fil li roy Gahmuret.

der fürste sprach 'ich pin niht got,
ich leiste ab gerne sîn gebot.
du maht hie vier rîter sehen, 175
ob du ze rehte kundest spehen.'

der knappe frāgte fürbaz
'du nennest rîter: waz ist daz?
hāstu niht gotelicher kraft,
sō sage mir, wer gīt rîterschaft.' 180

'daz tuot der künec Artūs.
juncherre, komet ir in des hūs,
der bringet iuch an rîters namen,
daz ir's iuch niemer durfet schamen.
ir muget wol sîn von rîters art.' 185

von den helden er geschouwet wart:
dō lac diu gotes kunst an ime.
von der āventiure ich daz nime,

diu mich mit wārheit des beschiet :

nie mannes varwe baz geriet *made a better* 190
vor ime sīt Adāmes zīt.

des wart sīn lop von wīben wīt. *widely known*

Aber sprach der knappe sān
dā von ein lachen wart getān.

'ay rīter got, waz mahtu sīn?

du hāst sus manec vingerlīn *ring*

an dīnen līp gebunden,

dort oben unt hie unden.'

aldā begreif des knappen hant

swaz er īsers ame fūrsten vant : *and then* 200

des harnasch begunder schouwen.

'mīner muoter juncfrouwen

ir vingerlīn an snūeren tragent,

diu niht sus an ein ander ragent.' *propriet*

der knappe sprach durch sīnen muot *zum fürsten* 205

'war zuo ist ditze guot,

daz dich sō wol kan schicken?

i'ne mages niht abe gezwicken.'

der fūrste im zeigete sā sīn swert :

'nu sich, swer an mich strītes gert, *hülle* 210

des selben wer ich mich mit slegen :

für die sīne muoz ich an mich legen, *blows*

und für den schuz und für den stich *clashes*

muoz ich alsus wāpen mich.'

aber sprach der knappe snel

'ob die hirze trūegen sus ir vel, *had a spear on the*

son' verwunt' ir niht mīn gabyłōt. *hand spear*

der vellet manger vōr mir tōt.'

Die rīter zurnden daz er hielt

bi dem knappen der vil tumpheit wielt. 220

der fūrste sprach 'got hūete dīn.

ōwī wan wær' dīn schoene mīn!

alas if only your beauty were mine

dir hete got den wunsch gegeben,

ob du mit witzen soldest leben.

diu gotes kraft dir virre leit.'

diē sīne und och er selbe reit,

unde gāheten balde

z'einem velde in dem walde.

dā vant der gefüege

frōn Herzeloyden phltiege.

ir volke leider nie geschach ;

die er balde eren sach :

si begunden sēn, dar nāch egen,

ir gart ob starken ohsen wegen.

der fürste in guoten morgen bōt,

und frāgte sē, op sie sēhen nōt

eine juncfrouwen liden,

sine kunden niht vermīden,

swes er vrāgt', daz wart gesaget.

'zwēne rīter und ein maget

dā rīten hiute morgen.

diu frouwe fuor mit sorgen :

mit sporen sie vaste ruorten,

die die juncfrouwen fuorten.'

ez was Meljahkanz.

den ergāhte Karnachkarnanz,

mit strīte er ime die frouwen nam :

diu was dā vor frōuden lam.

sie hiez Īmāne

von der Bēāfontāne.

Die būliute verzageten,

dō die helde für sie jageten.

sie sprāchen 'wie'st uns sus geschehen?

hāt unser junchërre ersehen

ūf disen rītern helme schart,

sonē hān wir uns niht wol bewart.

wir sulen der küneginne haz
 von schulden hoeren umbe daz,
 wand' er mit uns dā her lief
 hiute morgen dō sie dannoch slief.' 260
 der knappe enruochte ouch wer dō schōz,
 die hirze kleine unde grōz:
 er huop sich gein der muoter wider,
 und sagete ir mār'. dō viel sie nider:
 sīner worte sie sō sēre erschrac, 265
 daz sī unversunnen vor im lac.
 dō diu küneginne
 wider kom z'ir sinne,
 swie sie dā vor wær' verzaget,
 dō sprach sie 'sun, wer hāt gesaget 270
 dir von rīters orden?
 wā bist du's innen worden?'
 'muoter, ich sach vier man
 noch liechter danne got getān:
 die sageten mir von rīterschaft. 275
 Artūses küneclichiu kraft
 sol mich nāch rīters ēren
 an schildes ambet kēren.'
 sich huop ein niuwer jāmer hie.
 diu frouwe enwesse rehte, wie 280
 daz sie ir den list erdæhte
 unde in von dem willen bræhte.

Der knappe tump unde wert
 iesch von der muoter dicke ein pfert.
 daz begunde sē in ir herzen klagen. 285
 sie dæhte 'i'n wil im niht versagen:
 ez muoz aber vīl böese sīn.'
 dō gedæhte mēr diu künegin
 'der liute vīl bī spotte sint. 290
 tōren kleider sol mīn kint

ob sime liechten libe tragen.

wirt er geroufet unt geslagen,
sō kumet er mir her wider wol.'

ōwē der jæmerlichen dol!

diu frouwe nam ein sactuoch:

sie sneit im hemedē unde bruoch,

daz doch an eime stücke erschein,

unz enmitten an sîn blankez bein.

daz wart für tōren kleit erkant.

ein gugel man obene drūfe vant.

al frisch rūch kelberin

von einer hūt zwei ribbalin

nāch sīnen beinen wart gesniten.

dā wart grōz jāmer niht vermiten.

diu künegīn was alsō bedāht,

sie bat beliben in die naht.

'dunē solt niht hinnen kēren,

ich wil dich list ē lēren.

an ungebanten strāzen

soltu tunkel fürte lāzen:

die sihte unde lūter sīn,

dā solte al balde rīten in.

du solt dich site nieten,

der werelde grūezen bieten.

ob dich ein grā wīse man

zuht wil lērn als er wol kan,

dem soltu gerne volgen,

und wis im niht erbolgen.

sun, lā dir bevolhen sīn,

swa du guotes wībes vingerlīn

mūgest erwerben unt ir gruo

daz nim: ez tuot dir kumbers buo

du solt z'ir kusse gāhen

und ir lip vast' umbevāhen:

daz gīt gelücke und hōhen muot,

295

300

305

310

315

320

325

fewer good fortune

op sie kiusche ist unde guot.
 du solt och wizzen, sun mīn,
 der stolze k̄ene Lāhelīn
 dinen f̄ürsten abe ervaht zwei lant,
 diu solten dienen diner hant, 330
 Wāleis und Norgāls.
 ein dīn f̄ürste T̄ürkentals
 den tōt von sīner hende enphienc:
 dīn volc er sluoc unde vienc.
 'diz riche ich, muoter, ruocht es got: 335
 in verwundet noch mīn gabylōt.'

Des morgens dō der tag erschein,
 der knappe balde wart enein,
 im was gein Artūse gāch. 340
 frou Herzeloide in kuste und lief im nāch.
 der werelde riuwe aldā geschach.
 dō sie ir sun niht langer sach
 (der reit enwec: wem'st deste baz?),
 dō viel diu frouwe valsches laz 345
 1 ūf die erde, aldā sie jāmer sneit
 dō daz sē ein sterben niht vermeit.
 ir vil getriulicher tōt
 der frouwen wert' die hellenōt.
 ōwol sie daz sē ie muoter wart!
 sus fuor die lōnes bernden vart 350
 ein wurzel der güete
 und ein stam der diemüete.
 ōwē daz wir nu niht enhān
 ir sippe unz an den eilften spān!
 des wirt gevelschet manec lip. 355
 doch solten nu getriuwu wip
 heiles wūnschen disem knaben,
 der sich hie von ir hāt erhaben.

i.e. secured her salvation.

from laufen

NOTES

[The references refer to the paragraphs in the Grammar.]

I. BERTHOLD VON REGENSBURG

- p. 79, l. 13. **werdent sehende**, will see.
p. 79, l. 19. **daʒ si anders niht enpfæge**, see §§ 102, 108.
p. 81, l. 34. **von sō getāner freude**, of joy of such a beautiful kind.

II. LANTREHTBUOCH

- p. 83, l. 26. **mege**, pres. subj. of **mac**, see § 93.
p. 85, l. 15. **sempervriēn**, from **sentbærevriēn**, the highest class of freemen.
p. 85, l. 17. **miter** = **mitter(e)**, *aj. nom. pl.*, middle, see § 9, 2.

III. DER ARME HEINRICH

- l. 6. **im**, is reflexive, see §§ 66, 104.
ll. 24-5. That this one (er) may pray to God for the salvation of Heinrich's soul.
l. 31. **ze Swāben** = in the country of the Swabians, i.e. Swabia.
l. 38. **ze handen haben**, possess.
l. 50. **versworn**, *pp.* of **verswern**, § 86.
l. 101. **des muge wir**: **des** is dependent on **ein wārez bilde**; for **muge**, see § 74, note.
l. 106. **sehent** = **sehet**, imperative.
ll. 133-4. **dō . . . alrēst**, as soon as.
l. 164. **eime** = **eineme**, see § 9, 3.
l. 190. **gnislich** = **genislich**, cp. § 9, 7.
l. 239. **für die selben frist**, since then.
ll. 240-1. no longer any hopes of being healed.

- l. 257. **sich abe tuon**, renounce, resign.
- l. 351. **getwelte**, had dwelt, see § 106.
- ll. 372-3. The construction is **sō ze Salerne vil meister** (*gen.*) **von arzenien ist**, see § 102.
- l. 376. **kunde** for **kundet**.
- l. 486. **es** *gen.* is dependent on **niht**.
- l. 547. **sich ein dinc an nemen**, to take a thing to heart.
- l. 591. **mohter** = **mohte er**, see § 65, note 3.
- l. 621. **die wile daz**, so long as.
- l. 640. **wan** = **waz ne**, why not.
- l. 756. **verswīge wir** is the imperative, cp. also note to l. 101.
- l. 846. **dīme** = **dīneme**, see § 9, 3.

IV. WALTHER VON DER VOGELWEIDE

- l. 144. **kond** *pret.* of **kan**.
- ll. 174-5. They would imagine themselves ruined if they did not exercise a stern rule. On the omission of the negative see § 108.
- l. 178. **tiuschiu zunge**, German language, i.e. Germany.
- l. 182. **bekērā**, see **ā** in the Glossary.
- l. 185. **Philippe** is *dative*; **en** = **den**.
- l. 187. **man . . . wībe** are the *gen. plural*.
- l. 214. **guoter** is *gen. plural*.
- l. 232. **bluomen . . . wunder**, a great multitude of flowers.
- l. 250. **daz sie schiere got gehōene!** may God curse them soon.
- l. 255. **Der uns freude wider bræhte**, if anyone would bring us joy again.
- l. 285. **bien** = **bī den**.
- l. 292. **weder ir**, which of the two.
- l. 308. **hōhste** (weak form) **name**, the most beautiful *or* precious name.
- l. 429. **du lā dir niht ze wē sīn nāch dem guote**, do not worry yourself too much about wealth.
- ll. 475-6. Very many call thee father, who will not recognize me as their brother.
- ll. 498-9. See Extracts from Reinmar, ll. 184-192.

V. REINMAR

- l. 33. Liutpolt: Duke Leopold VI of Austria.
 l. 75. **bekan = bekam.**

VII. DAS NIBELUNGEN-LIED

- l. 28. **sīme = sīneme**, see § 9, 3; **widerseit = widersaget**, § 37.
 l. 32. **nāch unkrefte**, after she had regained her consciousness.
 l. 37. **bat sich wīsen**, asked them to lead her to.
 l. 43. **ermorderōt**, older form of *pp.* of **ermordern**, see § 88, note.
 l. 88. **āne tuon**, with *gen.* and *acc.*, bereave, rob.
 l. 92. **weinende sīn = weinen**, see § 106.
 l. 213. **huop sich von dan**, betook themselves away.

VIII. PARZIVAL

- l. 17. that they should never mention the word 'knight'. On the omission of the negative see § 108.
 l. 42. **weinde = weinende**, see § 29.
 ll. 83-4. The mother explained to him fully the difference between darkness and light, i.e. between the Devil and God.
 l. 141. **leh cons = le (li) cons**, the Count.
 ll. 157-8. K. asked him, who was the perfection of human beauty.
 l. 172. **fil li roy**, son of the king.
 l. 243. Supply **ros** as object.

GLOSSARY

ABBREVIATIONS

sm., *sf.*, *sn.*, = strong masculine, &c.

wm., *wf.*, *wn.*, = weak masculine, &c.

pret.-pres. = preterite-present.

The remaining abbreviations need no explanation.

The Roman numeral after a verb indicates the class to which the verb belongs. The ordinary numerals after a word indicate the paragraph in the Grammar where the word either occurs or some peculiarity of it is explained.

A

ā, *interj.* added to the imperative, nouns, and particles; *neinā*, certainly not.

ab, *abe*, *prep. c. dat.* of, from; *av.* away, away from, 9. 6.

aber, *abr*, *ab*, *av.* and *cj.* again, once more, but; *aber sprēchen*, answer, reply.

acker, *sm.* field, acre, 9. 2, 31. 2, 42.

Adām, *pn.* Adam.

adamas, *sm.* diamond.

æber, *sn.* place where the snow has melted away.

ænic (with *gen.*), *aj.* bereft.

äher (OHG. *ahir*), *sn.* ear of corn.

aht(e), *num.* eight, 62.

aht(e), *sf.* attention, meditation; station, position.

ahtede, *num.* eighth, 62.

ahten, *vv.* observe, consider, deliberate.

ah(t)zēhen, *num.* eighteen, 62.

ah(t)zēhende, *num.* eighteenth, 62.

sv. = strong verb.

wv. = weak verb.

pn. = proper name.

ah(t)zic (-ec), *num.* eighty, 62.
ah(t)zigeste, *num.* eightieth, 62.

al (*infl.* *aller*, *allez*, *alliu* (*älliu*, *elliu*)), *aj.* all; *al dā*, there, thereupon; *al dō*, as soon as; *al ein*, all one, the same; *aller hande*, of all kinds; *alle wēge*, everywhere, 55.

aleine, *av.* alone.

allenthalben, *av.* on all sides.

allertegelich, *av.* daily.

allez, *av.* always, already.

allmahtic (*almähtic*, *almeh-*

tic), *aj.* all-powerful, almighty.

almuosen, *sn.* alms, charity.

alrēst = *aller ērst*, at first.

als, see *alsō*.

alsam, *av.* as, just as, 69.

alsō (*alse*, *als*), *av.* as, just as, so, likewise, 69; *alse dar*, always, all the time.

alsolch = *solch*.

alsus (*alsust*), *av.* in this manner, so, thus.

alt, *aj.* old, former, 10, 57.

alter, *sn.* age.

alwære, *aj.* foolish.

alze, *av.* too, too much.

alzehant, *av.* on the spot, at once, immediately.
am = **an dēm**.
ambet, *sn.* service, office, calling.
anblic, *sm.* look.
ander, *num.* and *pr.* other, second, 55, 62, 71.
anders, *av.* otherwise, else;
niht anderswan, nothing but.
anderswar, *av.* elsewhere.
ane (an), *prep. c. dat. or acc.* on, by, in; of; along with; until, 9. 6; **an dēn līp**, by (their) life, on the penalty of (their) life; **an dēr stat**, at once, on the spot.
āne (ān), *av.* alone, free, deprived of; **eines āne wērdēn**, to lose; *cj.* except; *prep. c. acc. or gen.* without, except, next to.
ange, *av.* narrowly, exactly, carefully, anxiously, 9. 7.
anger, *sm.* grass plot.
angesiht, *sf.* sight.
angest, *smf.* care, sorrow, anxiety.
anges(t)lich, *aj.* anxious, fearful, dangerous, terrible.
anme, **amme**, **ame**, **am** = **an dēme**, 68, note 2.
ansēhen, *sv.* V, look at, behold.
—anst (pl. enste), *sf.* favour, 49.
antlütze, **antlitze**, *sn.* face, countenance.
antwürten (pret. antwurte), *vv.* answer.
apfel, *sm.* apple, 31, 2.
ar, *wm.* eagle, 9. 1, 50.
arbeit (arebeite), *sf.* work, trouble, grief.
arbeitsam, *aj.* painful, troublesome.
arc (-ges), *aj.* bad, mischievous, wicked.

arm, *aj.* poor, helpless, unhappy, 57.
arm, *sm.* arm.
armuot, *sf.* poverty, want.
art, *smf.* inborn manner, nature, quality; origin, descent.
Artūs, *pn.* Arthur, king of Britain.
arzāt, *sm.* physician.
arzenie, *sf.* medicine, remedy.
ās, *sn.* carrion, 28.
ātem, *sm.* breath, 42.
āventiure, *sf.* wonderful event
ay, *interj.* ah! alas!

B

bābest, *sm.* pope.
bāgen, *sv.* VII, quarrel, 87.
bal (-les), *sm.* ball.
balde, *av.* boldly, bravely, valiantly; quickly; **balde wērdēn enein**, be quickly resolved.
balt, *aj.* courageous, full of courage, firm, unyielding.
baltlich, *aj.* courageous.
bange, *aj.* anxious, 9. 7.
bannen, *sv.* VII, banish, expel, put under the ban, 87.
bar, *aj.* bare, 55.
bāre, *sf.* bier.
bat (-des), *sn.* bath, flood of tears.
baz, *av.* better, more, 61; **baz geriten**, quicker; **baz veile**, of less value; **wēm'st deste baz?**, who feels joy at this parting?
Bēāfontāne, *pn.*
bedāht, *p.p.* thoughtful, intent.
bēde = **beide**.
bedecken (pret. -dacte, -dahte), *vv.* cover, 90.
bedenken (pret. -dāhte, subj. pret. -dæhte), think over, consider; **sich dēs willen bedenken**, decide upon a thing.

bediuten, *vv.* expound ; *refl.* mark, denote.
bedriezen, *sv.* II, seem troublesome or irksome.
bedunken (*pret.* -dūhte), *vv.* seem, appear.
bedürfen, *bedürfen* (*pr. sing.* -darf), *pret. pres.*, need, require ; see **dürfen**.
begān, *anom. v.* to do a thing ; *refl.* live ; see **gān**.
begiezen, *sv.* II, pour over, moisten.
beginnen, *sv.* III (*pret.* also weak **begunde**, **begonde**), **begin**, 81.
begraben, *sv.* VI, bury, inter.
begrifen, *sv.* I, grasp, understand.
begunder = **begunde** **ēr**.
behagen, *vv.* please, delight, suit.
behalten, *sv.* VII, hold, keep, preserve, reserve, store up.
beherten, *vv.* harden, enforce.
behüeten, *vv.* keep, preserve, protect.
behuot, *p.p.* of **behüeten**.
beide (**bēde**), *num., neut.* **beidiu**, both ; **beide—und**, both—and.
beidenthalben, *av.* on both sides.
Beier, *pn.* people of Bavaria, Bavarians.
beier(i)sch, *aj.* Bavarian.
bein, *sn.* bone, leg, 5, 11.
beiten, *vv.* wait ; *sn.* a waiting.
bejagen, *vv.* acquire, get.
bejēhen, *sv.* V, assure.
bekan = **bekam**.
bekennen (*pret.* -kante), *vv.* know, recognize, get to know.
bekēren, *vv.* employ, turn ; **bekēren sich**, turn round.
bekomen, *sv.* IV, get, obtain.
beliben (**bliben**), *sv.* I, remain, 9, 7, 76 ; **under wēgen beliben**, be left undone, cease.

beliuchten, *vv.* illumine, explain, make manifest.
benamen = **bī namen**, in the true sense of the word.
benēmen, *sv.* IV, take, take away ; *c. gen.* exempt.
berāten, *sv.* VII, consider, arrange, provide for ; *refl.* consider, reflect.
bērc (-ges), *sm.* mountain.
bereit (**bereite**), *aj.* ready, willing ; *av.* readily, willingly, 55.
bereiten (*pret.* -reite), *vv.* plough, make arable, prepare, make ready.
bērgen, *sv.* III, hide, 81.
bērn, *sv.* IV, bear, carry, bring forth, 9, 1, 19, 82.
bern (*pret.* **berte**), *vv.* beat, strike.
berouben, *vv.* bereave, rob.
berüeren, *vv.* touch, move.
besarken (**beserken**), *vv.* put into the coffin.
beschēhen, *sv.* V, happen.
bescheiden, *sv.* VII, make clear, explain.
bescheiden (**bescheidenlich**), *aj.* sensible, prudent.
bescheidenheit, *sf.* understanding, sense, prudence.
bescheidenlichen, *av.* definitely, clearly, sensibly.
beschern, *vv.* bestow upon, divide, let out.
bēseme, *wm.* besom ; rod.
besitzen (*pret.* -saz), *sv.* V, take possession of.
besliezen, *sv.* II, close, shut.
besorgen, *vv.* provide, be conscious of ; requite.
bestān, *anom. v.* remain ; attack, assail ; **einen bestān**, concern, belong to.
beste, *aj.* and *av.* best, 9, 5, 23, 1, 61.
besunder, *av.* apart.

beswærde, *sf.* affliction, grief, sadness.

beswären, *vv.* afflict, grieve.

beswern (*pret.* -swuor, *pp.* -sworn), *sv.* VI, take an oath, swear to.

bēte, *sf.* request, command.

bēten, *vv.* pray, 92.

betrachten, *vv.* view, consider.

betriegen, *sv.* II, deceive.

betrüeben, *vv.* make gloomy or angry.

bette, *sn.* bed, 10, 46.

bettestat, *sf.* couch, place of rest.

bevêlhen, *sv.* III, order, recommend; bring home to a person, 19, 34, 81.

bevinden, *sv.* III, become sensible of, get to know.

bewachen, *vv.* watch, guard.

bewarn, *vv.* protect, guard against, preserve; avert, ward off, prevent.

bewêgen (*sich* with *gen.*), *sv.* V, resolve to or upon, take upon oneself; part with, cast off.

bewenden (*pp.* -want), *vv.* turn to, use.

bewîsen, *vv.* put right, inform, instruct.

bezzet (*superl.* bezzest, beste), *aj.* better, 58.

bezzern, *vv. refl.* get better, improve.

bezzeringe, *sf.* improvement, 8.

bī, *prep.* and *av.* near, near by, with, beside; thereby; **bī sīn** with *dat.* of person: be near, have; **bī minen triuwen**, in truth, upon my word!; **bī mīnen ziten**, during my lifetime; **bī spotte sīn**, like mockery; **bī wēsen**, remain.

bibenen (*biben*, *pp.* *bibent*), *vv.* quake, tremble.

biderbe, *aj.* noble, active, good.

biegen, *sv.* II, bow, bend, 5, 11, 12, 15, 16, 18, 33, 78.

bien = **bī dēn**.

bieten, *sv.* II, offer, show, 5, 11, 18, 25, 78.

bilde, *sn.* example, comparison.

bilden, *vv.* form.

billich, *aj.* becoming, right.

billichen, *av.* rightly, properly, befittingly.

bin, *am*, 97.

binden, *sv.* III, bind, fasten, 10 note 2, 11, 12, 15, 33, 81; **wōl gebunden**, with the hair neatly braided and decked out.

bir, *swf.* pear, 50.

bīten, *sv.* I, wait, put off, delay, 76.

bit(t)en (*pret.* *bat*), *sv.* V, ask, beg, request, command, 3, 26, 31, 3, 84.

bitter, *aj.* bitter, 20, 31, 2, 55.

bitterlich, *aj.* bitter, 8.

bitterlichen, *av.* bitterly.

biz, *sm.* bite, 44.

bīzen, *sv.* I, bite, 5, 19, 76.

blā (-wes), *aj.* blue, 36, 55.

blanc, *aj.* white, shining, beautiful.

blāsen, *sv.* VII, blow, 87.

blat, *sn.* leaf.

blī (-ges), *snm.* lead, 35.

blīben = **belīben**.

blic (-ckes), *sm.* glance, look; splendour.

blīdeclīchen, *av.* blithely, joyfully.

blint (-des), *aj.* blind, 7, 9, 2, 55, 56.

bliuwen, *sv.* II, strike, 16 note, 19, 36, 79.

blōz, *aj.* bare, naked; only.

blūejen, **blūewen**, **blūen**, *vv.* bloom, 19, 35, 90.

blūemen, *vv.* bloom, 90.

bluome, *wmf.* flower, blossom.

bluot, *sn.* blood.
 bluoten, *ww.* bleed.
 boc (-ckes), *sm.* he-goat, 10, 32. 1.
 böcklīn, *sn.* little he-goat, 10.
 bæse, *aj.* bad, worthless, despicable.
 boge, *wm.* bow.
 bōlzelīn, *sn.* little cross-bow, bolt or arrow.
 borgen, *ww.* borrow.
 bote, *wm.* messenger, 51.
 bougen, böugen, *ww.* bend, 10.
 boum, *sm.* tree.
 bōzen, *sv.* VII, beat, strike, 87.
 brā (brāwe), *swf.*, brow, eye-brow; eyelash, 48.
 brāten, *sv.* VII, roast, 87.
 brächen, *sv.* IV, break, pluck, gather; neglect, 82.
 breit, *aj.* wide, broad.
 brennen, *ww.* burn, 10, 11, 90.
 bresten, *sv.* IV, break, burst, be deficient, want, lack, 19.
 brief (-ves), *sm.* letter, 33, 44.
 bringen (*pret.* brāhte, *pret. subj.* bræhte), bring, 28, 29, 91; sich bringen lāzen, let oneself be brought; vür bringen, carry out.
 brinnen, *sv.* III, burn, 81.
 briuwen, *sv.* II, brew, 16 note, 79.
 brøede, *aj.* breakable, perishable.
 brōt, *sn.* bread.
 brugge, brügge (brucke, brücke), *sf.* bridge, 10 note 3, 26, 31. 3.
 brūn, *aj.* brown; dark-coloured.
 brunne, *wm.* spring, well, brook.
 bruoch, *sf.* covering for the upper part of the thigh.
 bruoder, *sm.* brother, 3, 5, 11, 24, 25, 45.
 brust (*pl.* bruste, brüste), *sf.* breast, bosom, 10 note 3, 49.

brūt (*pl.* briute), bride, 5, 10, 11.

bū (-wes), *smn.* cultivated land; farmhouse; dwelling, abode, 42.

büechlīn, *sn.* little book, 10.

būman (*pl.* būliute), *sm.* peasant, farmer, farm labourer.

buoch, *sn.* book, 10.

buosem, *sm.* bosom, 9. 2.

buoz, *sm.* remedy, compensation, reparation; buoz tuon *c gen.*, free from, liberate from.

būr, *sm.* peasant.

burc (-ge), *sf.* castle, town, 10 note 1, 49.

burgære, *sm.* citizen, parishioner.

burt, *sf.* birth, of good family.

butze, *wm.* hobgoblin, bugbear; in butzen wis, like a ghostly hobgoblin.

būwen, biuwen (*pret.* biute), *ww.* till, cultivate, plant.

C

For c see k.

D

dā, dār, *av.* there, where, 39, 69; dā mite, therewith; dā von, thereby; dā vor, before it or that; dā zuo, thereby, therewith, thereto.

dach, *sn.* covering, 31. 3.

dagen, *ww.* be silent, 92.

dahte, see decken.

danc (-kes), *sm.*, thanks, wish; sunder or an' mīnen danc, against my wish.

danken, *ww.* thank, 9. 2.

danne, denne (dan), *av.* then; after the comparative, than as; in conditional sentences with or without ne = unless.

dannen, *av.* from there, thence; wherefrom, 69.

dannoch (*dennoch*), *av.* however, even, still; besides, in addition to this; moreover.

dar, *dare*, *av.* thither, whither, 69; **dar an**, thereon, in that, therein; **dar für**, before it; **dar nāch**, thereupon, after that; **dar umbe**, therefore, 69; **dar under**, amongst them, in between; **dar zuo**, besides, in addition.

dārinne, *darinne*, *av.* therein.

daz, *cf.* that.

dechein, *pr.* no, none, 71.

decken (*pret.* *dacte*, *dahte*), *vv.* cover, 23. 2, 31. 3, 32. 2, 90.

dēgen, *sm.* warrior, vassal, 11.

dehein, *dekein*, *pr.* any one; no, none, 71.

deich = *daz ich*.

deist = *daz ist*.

denen (*dennen*), *vv.* stretch, 92.

denken (*pret.* *dāhte*), think, 5, 11, 28, 29, 91.

denne = *danne*.

dennoch, see *dannoch*.

dēr, *daz*, *diu*, *def. art.*, *dem. pr.*, and *rel. pr.*, the, who; 9. 6, 68, 69; **dēs**, *av.* with which, thereby, therefore, wherefore.

derfüre, *av.* out.

dernider, *av.* down.

dērst = *dēr ist*.

dēst, *deis*, *dēs* = *daz ist*, 68 note 1.

deste, *av.* the more, all the more; *before comparatives*, the, so much, 11.

dēs wār (= *daz ist wār*), *av.* truly, in truth, indeed.

dewēder, *dwēder*, *pr.* one of two, neither of two, 71.

deꝛ = *daz*.

dic (*dicke*), *aj.* thick, dark, 55;

av. dicke, often; *dicke baz*, often still better.

die = Middle Germ. form of *dēr*.

diech = *daz ich*.

diemüete, *sf.* humility.

dien = *die en*.

dienen, *vv.* serve, earn, deserve; requite, 9. 2, 92.

dienest (*dienst*), *sm.* service, serviceableness; devotion, 9. 2; **ze dienste**, out of devotion.

dienstman, *sm.* servant, foffeee.

diep (-*bes*), *sm.* thief; **ze diebe wēden**, become a thief.

diezen, *sv.* 11, resound, roar, rush, 18, 78.

dīhen (*pret.* *dēch*, *pp.* *gedigen*), *sv.* 1, thrive, 17, 30, 76.

dīn, *pr.* thy, 9. 3, 67.

dinc (-*ges*), *sn.* thing, affair, 46.

dingen, *vv.* speak, make a contract.

dirre, *diser*, *dise* (*neut.* *ditze*, *diz*, *diz*; *fem.* *disiu*), *pr.* this, 68.

diuhen, *vv.* change, remove; press, shove.

diuten, *vv.* intimate, relate, display.

diuwe (*diw*), *sf.* servant, 48.

dō, *do*, *av.* and *cf.* then, when, as, 69.

doch, *av.* yet, however, nevertheless.

dol, *sf.* suffering, pain, distress, misery, 48.

doln, *vv.* endure, tolerate, suffer, 90.

dōn, *tōn* (*pl.* *dōne*), *sm.* sound, melody, song.

donreslac (-*ges*), *sm.* thunder-clap, lightning.

dorf (*pl.* *dörper*), *sn.* village, hamlet, 10.

dorn, *sm.* thorn, 24.

dörperlich, *aj.* peasant-like, rustic.

dort, *av.* there, yonder.

douwen, döuwen, *vv.* digest, 10.

dræjen (dræn), *vv.* turn, 35, 90.

drâte, *av.* quickly, immediately; also drâte, directly, forthwith.

dreschen, *sv.* IV, thrash, 11, 82.

drī (neut. driu), *num.* three, 62, 63; drīer hande, of three kinds.

dringen, *sv.* III, press, throng, shoot up, also *sn.*, 81; für sich dringen, press forwards, spread.

dristunt, *av.* thrice.

ditte, drite, *num.* third, 26, 62.

drīvaltic, *aj.* threefold.

drīzic (-ec), *num.* thirty, 62.

drīzēhen, *num.* thirteen, 62.

drīzēhende, *num.* thirteenth, 62.

d īzigeste, *num.* thirtieth, 62.

drouwe (drowe, drō), *sf.* threat, threatening.

drouwen, drōuwen, *vv.* threaten, 3, 10.

drucken, drücken, *vv.* press, 10 note 3, 90.

drūse = dar ūse.

drumb(e), *av.* to that end, therefore.

drunder = dar under.

dū, du, *pr.* thou; *gen.* dīn; *dat.* dir; *acc.* dich; *pl. nom.*

ir; *gen.* iuwer; *dat.* iu; *acc.* iuch, 65.

dulden, *vv.* endure.

dūme, *wm.* thumb.

dunken, dūnken (*pret.* dūhte, *pret. subj.* diuhte), seem, appear, 5, 10 note 2, 11, 29, 91; sich ze nihte dunken, to imagine oneself undone.

dünne, *aj.* thin, 5, 10, 11, 55.

durch (dur), *prep.* through, on account of, for, for the sake of, 34; dur daz, on this account, for that reason, there-

fore; durch plates stimme, for drawing sounds or notes from the leaf; for making a whistling sound on the leaf; durch sinen muot, through his (childish) mind.

durfen, dürfen (*pres. sing.* darf, *pret.* dorfte, *pret. subj.* dörfte), *pret. pres.* need, 16, 93.

dürftige, *wm.* beggar, one in want of help.

dūz = du ēz.

E

ē, ēr, *av.* formerly, rather, sooner, before, 39, 61

ēben, *aj.* even, 55, 60.

ēbere, *av.* evenly, smoothly, well-fitting, 60.

ecke, *swf.*, *sn.* corner, 31, 3.

edel(e), *aj.* and *av.* noble, 60.

edelinc, *sm.* son of a nobleman, 8.

edeln, *vv.* ennoble.

egen, *vv.* harrow.

egeslich (eislich), *aj.* fearful, terrible, 37.

ēht (ēt, öt), *av.* only; even, at any rate, 34.

ei (*pl.* eijer, eiger, eier), *sn.* egg, 35, 47.

ei, *interj.* ah.

eiden, *vv.* take an oath, pledge.

eigen, *aj.* own, 55.

eigen, *sn.* property; ze eigen gēben, present.

eilte, *aj.* eleventh, 62.

ein, *num.* and *indef. art.* one; a, an, 9, 3, 62, 63; *indef. pr.* one, some one, 71.

einander, *pr.* one another.

eine, *av.* alone.

eines, *av.* once.

einic (-ec), *aj.* only, single.

einlif, einlef (eilif), *num.* eleven, 62.

ei(n)lifte (eilfte), *num.* eleventh, 62.

eischen, *sv.* VII, ask, demand.
 eislich, see egeslich.
 eit (-des), *sm.* oath.
 element, *sn.* element.
 ēlich, *aj.* legal, conjugal.
 ellen, *sn.* courage, valour; manliness.
 ellenboge, *wm.* elbow.
 ellenden, *wv.* go abroad.
 ellich, *aj.* universal, constant.
 elter, *aj.* older.
 eltlich, *aj.* elderly, old.
 emphēlhen, *sv.* III, recommend, 81.
 emzekeit, *sf.* activity, diligence, industry.
 en, *neg. particle*, generally used before the verb with or without *niht* after the verb, *not*.
 en in subordinate sentences with the subjunctive, *unless, if not, except that, when that, that not, &c.*
 en = in; shortened form of *dēn*.
 enbērn, *sv.* IV, be without a thing, do without.
 enbieten, *sv.* II, bid, announce, summon.
 enblanden, *sv.* VII, let be painful or irksome to.
 enblecken, *wv.* make visible, expose.
 ende, *sn.* end.
 endelichen, *av.* throughout, entirely.
 enden, *wv.* end, finish.
 einein = in ein.
 enge, *aj.* narrow, 55.
 enge, *sf.* narrow place, strait, difficulty.
 engel, *sm.* angel, 9. 2, 42.
 Engellant, *pn.* England, 54.
 engēlten, *sv.* III, pay, requite.
 enges(t)lich, *aj.* anxious, timid, dangerous.
 enke, *wm.* man who tends the cattle.

enmitten, *av.* in the midst;
 enmitten dō, during, whilst.
 enpfāhen, enpfān, *sv.* VII, accept, receive.
 enpfallen, *sv.* VII, pass away, perish.
 enpfinden, *sv.* III, perceive, become conscious of.
 enpflegen, *sv.* V, care for, cherish.
 enphēlhen, *sv.* III, order, recommend, 81.
 entrinnen, *sv.* III, escape.
 entsagen, *wv.* free, remove, withdraw.
 entseben (-seven), *sv.* VI, perceive, 86.
 entsetzen, *wv.* bereave, rob.
 entslāfen, *sv.* VII, fall asleep.
 en(t)springen, *sv.* III, spring up, shoot up. shoot forth.
 entstān, *sv.* VI, understand.
 entwēr, entwērch, *av.* athwart; perversely.
 entwēsen, *sv.* V, be without, do without.
 entwichen, *sv.* I, yield, go away.
 enwēc, *av.* away.
 enzīt, *av.* by times, soon.
 enzünden, *wv.* light, kindle.
 enzwischen, *prep.* between.
 ēr, si (sī, siu, sie), ēz, *pr.* he, she, it; *gen.* sīn (ēs), ir, es; *dat.* im(e), ir, im(e); *acc.* in, sie (sī, sī), ēz (iz); *pl. nom.* acc. si, sī, sie, *neut.* also siu; *gen.* ir(e); *dat.* in, 65.
 ērbære, *aj.* honourable, decent, modest.
 erbarmen, *wv.* move to pity.
 erbe, *sn.* inherited property, inheritance.
 erbeit = arbeit.
 erbeiten, *wv.* work, have trouble; *c. gen.* wait for.
 erbēlgen, *sv.* III, become angry, grow angry.

erben, *ww.* be hereditary, descend from generation to generation.

erbieten, *sv.* II, show, manifest.

erbīten, *sv.* I, wait.

erbleichen, *ww.* become pale.

erbolgen, *pp.* angered, angry with.

erbürn, *ww.* raise, lift up.

ërde, *wf.* earth, world, 14. 2.

erdenken (*pret.* **erdähte**, *pret. subj.* **erdähte**), *ww.* think out, devise, contrive.

ërderīch = **ërtrīch**.

erdiezen, *sv.* II, resound, re-echo.

erdringen, *sv.* III, gain by force.

erdrouwen, *ww.* compel by threats.

ëre, *wf.* honour, renown, 11.

ëren, *ww.* honour.

ërest, **ërste**, *aj.* first, 59.

ergāhen, *ww.* overtake, go to meet.

ergān, *sv.* VII, come out, happen.

erge, *sf.* wickedness.

ergēben, *sv.* V, submit, devote.

ergetzen, *ww.* cause to forget, compensate.

ergrīfen, *sv.* I, seize.

erhāhen, **erhān**, *sv.* VII, hang.

erheben, *sv.* VI, raise ; *refl.* rise.

erhæren, *ww.* hear.

erkalten, *ww.* become cold.

erkant, *aj.* known.

erkennelich, *aj.* well-known, renowned.

erkennen (*pret.* **kante**, **kande**), *ww.* recognize, perceive, understand ; know.

erkiesen, *sv.* II, elect, select, choose.

erklengen, *ww.* make resonant or sonorous.

erlāzen, **erlān**, *sv.* VII, release, forgive.

erlengen, *ww.* lengthen.

erleschen, *sv.* IV, extinguish.

erliden, *sv.* I, suffer.

erlouben, **erlōuben**, *ww.* allow, permit, 10.

erlæsen (*pp.* **erlöst**), *ww.* remove, free, deliver.

ermordern, *ww.* murder.

ern, **eren**, **erren** (*pret.* **ier**, *pp.* **gearn**), *sv.* VII, till, plough, 87.

ërn = **ër ne**.

ernern, *ww.* rescue, heal, cure.

erniuwen, *ww.* renew.

ërnst, *sm.* fervour.

errēchen, *sv.* IV, avenge.

ërrer, **ërre**, **ërre**, *aj.* former, 59.

erringen, *sv.* III, gain, obtain, get.

erscheinen, *ww.* show, make to appear.

erschellen, *sv.* III, resound.

erschiezen, *sv.* II, shoot, shoot through, pierce to death.

erschinen, *sv.* I, appear ; dawn.

erschrecken, *sv.* IV, frighten, become frightened ; *refl. c. gen.* become frightened at.

erschrien (*pret.* **-schrē**), *sv.* I, shriek, cry out.

ersēhen, *sv.* V, see, perceive.

erslahen, **erslān**, *sv.* VI, slay, kill.

ër(e)st, **ërste**, *av.* at first, so soon as, 61.

ërste, *num.* first, 9. 5, 62.

erstēben, *sv.* III, die.

erstrecken (*pret.* **erstracte**), *ww.* expand, spread out.

ërtrīch (**ërderīch**), *sn.* earth, world.

ertrinken, *sv.* III, drown, perish.

ervēhten, *sv.* IV, gain by fighting ; with **abe** and **dat.** : win or gain from by fighting.

ervinden, *sv.* III, experience, get to know.

ervollen, *vv.* become full.
ervröuwen, *vv.* rejoice, make glad.
erwachen, *vv.* awake.
erwecken (*pret.* -wahte), *vv.* waken, awaken.
erweln, *vv.* elect, choose.
erwerben, *sv.* III, reach, attain, acquire, beget.
erwern, *vv.* prevent, hinder.
erwinden, *sv.* III, turn round; be thrown back, be reflected.
erzeigen, *vv.* show, prove.
erziehen, *sv.* II, bring up, educate.
esche, *wf.* ash.
ët, êt = èht.
etelich, **eteslich** (**etlich**, **etslich**), *pr.* many a one, any one; *pl.* some, 71.
etewër, **eteswër**, *pr.* any or some one; *neut.* etewaz, anything, something, 70, 71.
ettewanne (**eteswenne**, **ettewenne**), *av.* sometimes.
ëvangëlîum, *sn.* gospel.
ëwic, *aj.* everlasting.
ëwiclîchen, *av.* ever, everlastingly.
ëz, *pr.* it, 65.
ëzzen (*pp.* gëzzen), *sv.* V, eat, 9, 7, 19, 20, 23, 1, 28, 83.

F

For f see v.

G

gäbe, *sf.* gift.
gabyrlôt, **gabilôt**, *sn.* small javelin or dart.
gäch (-hes), *aj.* quick, rapid, 55; **gäch wësen** (with *dat.* of pers.), be in a hurry; **mir ist gäch**, I hasten; *gen.* gähes as *av.*

gadem, *sn.* room, bed-room; house, 46.
gæhe, *aj.* quick, hasty.
gâhelôs, *aj.* fickle, wanton.
gâhen, **gâhen**, *vv.* hasten, hurry.
Gahmuret, *pn.*, the name of Parzival's father.
galge, *wm.* gallows, scaffold.
galle, *swf.* gall, bitterness, grief.
gan, see **gunnen**.
gân, **gën**, *sv.* VII, go, 87, 95; **umbe gân**, go or turn round.
ganz, *aj.* whole, entire, complete, 19, 60, 3.
ganzliche(n), *av.* completely, 60, 3.
gar (-wes), *aj.* ready, prepared, 9, 1, 36, 55.
gar, *av.* fully, entirely, completely.
gart, *sm.* goad, whip.
gartenære, *sm.* gardener, 8.
gast (*pl.* geste), stranger, guest, 3, 5, 10, 11, 44.
gearbeiten, *vv.* work.
gebærde, *sf.* countenance.
gebären, *vv.* behave, conduct oneself.
gëbe, *sf.* gift, 7, 48.
gebeine, *sn.* bones, remains.
gëben, *sv.* V, give, grant, 5, 12, 14, 2, 25, 28, 33, 83.
gëben, *pp.* = **gegëben**.
gebende, *sn.* head-dress.
gebët, *sn.* prayer.
gebeten, *sv.* II, order, command.
gebot, *sn.* command, order, commandment.
gebrëchen = **brëchen**.
gebreste, *wm.* defect, waste.
gebresten = **bresten**.
gebüezen, *vv.* atone for, improve.
gebüre, *wm.* peasant, citizen.
geburt, *sf.* birth, noble birth.

gedagen, *ww.* keep silent.
 gedanc, *sm.* thought, 44.
 gedanken = danken.
 gedenken (*pret.* -dāhte), *ww.*
 think, intend, strive; bear in
 mind, remember.
 gedienen, *ww.* earn, deserve,
 obtain.
 gedihen (gedien), *sv.* I, thrive,
 speed well, advance.
 gedinge, *wm.* or *sf.* hope,
 confidence; thought; con-
 tract.
 gedingen, *ww.* negotiate.
 gedranc (-ges), *sm.* thronging,
 crowd.
 gedulde, *gedult*, *sf.* patience.
 gedulteclichen, *av.* patiently.
 gedultic (-ec), *aj.* patient, in-
 dulgent, 10 note 1.
 gedultikeit, *sf.* patience.
 geenden, *ww.* end, finish.
 gefüege, *aj.* befitting, suitable,
 seemly.
 gefuoge, *sf.* fitness, good
 breeding.
 gegān = gān.
 gegeben = gēben.
 gegen (gein), *prep.* against,
 opposite to, towards, to; at,
 for, 37.
 gegihte, *sn.* gout, cramp.
 gegrüezen, *ww.* greet, salute.
 gehaben (*refl.*), *ww.* be, fare,
 feel.
 geheizen, *sv.* VII, promise;
 call, name.
 gehelfen = helfen.
 geheuge, *sf.* permission.
 gehiure, *aj.* lovely, charming,
 gracious.
 gehænen, *ww.* dishonour,
 abuse, revile, curse.
 gehæren, *ww.* hear.
 gehørsam(e), *sf.* obedience.
 geil, *aj.* joyous, joyful, gay.
 geist, *sm.* spirit, mind, ghost.
 gejegede, *sn.* hunt.

geklopfen, *ww.* knock.
 gël (-wes), *aj.* yellow, 55.
 gelāz, *sm.* formation, figure,
 shape.
 gelēben, *ww.* live, live to see.
 geleischiert, *pp.* with or hav-
 ing the reins of the horse
 slack; see leischieren.
 geleisten = leisten.
 geleit = geleet.
 geleite, *sn.* protection, retinue;
wm. attendant, companion.
 gëlf (gëlp), *aj.* shining;
 merry, insolent.
 gelich (glic), *aj.* like, same,
 straight, even, 9. 7; *av.* ge-
 liche, equally, in like manner.
 gelichen, *refl.* *ww.* be like, be
 equal; resemble.
 gelieben, *ww.* love, make dear,
 please.
 geligen, *sv.* V, succumb, be
 ruined.
 gelimpfen, *ww.* be meet, 23. 2.
 gelingen, *sv.* III, succeed, 81;
 mir gelingt wol, I have good
 success.
 gelit, glit (-des), *sn.* member,
 9. 7.
 geloube, *wm.* faith.
 gelouben, gelöuben, *ww.* be-
 lieve, think, 10, 33, 90.
 gölt (-des), *sn.* money.
 gölten, *sv.* III, pay, requite;
 procure, 9. 4 note, 81.
 gelücke, *sn.* good fortune, hap-
 piness.
 gelust, *sm.* wish, desire; joy,
 pleasure.
 gemach, *sm.*, rest, ease; bed-
 room.
 gemachen, *ww.* make.
 gemahle, *wf.* bride.
 gemeine, *aj.* common, familiar.
 gemeit, *aj.* happy, joyful.
 gemēren, *ww.* increase.
 gemiden, *sv.* I, avoid, keep at
 a distance.

gemīten, *sv.* I, shun, avoid.
 gemüete, *sn.* disposition, desire, longing; heart.
 gemuot, *aj.* minded, disposed, inclined.
 genāde, gnāde, *sf.* grace, favour, kindness, 9. 7; in addressing a person: be gracious; genāde sagen, thank; ūf genāde, graciously.
 genādelōs, *aj.* unhappy, without grace.
 genāden, *ww.* to thank.
 genædic, *aj.* gracious, merciful.
 genæme, *aj.* beloved, dear, pleasant.
 ganne, gnanne, *wm.* name-sake, 9. 7.
 genēsen, *sv.* V, recover, become well or free, 30, 83.
 genieten, *ww. refl.* rejoice, be glad, become satisfied with.
 geniezen, *sv.* II *c. gen.*, enjoy, have advantage of; make use of, use as food.
 genisbære, *aj.* healable, curable.
 genislich, *aj.* healable, curable.
 genist, *sf.* recovery.
 genōz, *sm.* companion.
 genōzen (hin ze), *ww.* compare, compare with.
 genüegen, *ww.* be sufficient, suffice; mich genüeget dēs, that is enough for me.
 genuoc, gnuoc, *aj.* and *av.* enough, 9. 7; *pl.* many; as *indecl. sb.* with *gen.* enough.
 genüogen = genüegen.
 gequeln, *ww.* plague, torment.
 gēr, gir, *sf.* longing, eager desire.
 gerāde, grāde, *aj.* quick, 9. 7.
 gerāten (*pret.* -riet), *sv.* VII, advise; come at; prosper, thrive, succeed.
 gerēch, grēch, *aj.* straight, 9. 7.

gerich, *sm.* revenge, vengeance.
 gerihte, *sn.* jurisdiction.
 gerinlichen, *av.* small, easily.
 geringen, *sv.* III, struggle, strive.
 geriute, *sn.* arable land.
 geriuwen, *ww.* repent, lament.
 gēr̄n (with *gen.* and *dat.*), *ww.* long for, yearn for, desire, want, hanker after.
 gēr̄ne, *av.* willingly, gladly.
 gerte, *swf.* rod.
 gerūmen, *ww.* leave, make room.
 geruochen, *ww.* be pleased, hold good for.
 gesagen, *ww.* say, tell.
 geschaffen, *sv.* VI, provide, care for, create.
 geschafft, *sf.* creature, 28.
 geschēhen, *sv.* V, happen fall to one's lot or share, 19, 34, 83.
 geschiht, *sf.* occurrence, event.
 geschlāhte, *sn.* race, generation, 10.
 gesēgen, *ww.* bless.
 gesēhen = sēhen.
 geselle, *wm.* companion.
 geselleschaft, *sf.* company.
 gesīn = sīn.
 gesinde, *sn.* retinue; *wm.* retainer.
 gesingen = singen.
 gesitzen = sitzen.
 gesmac, *sm.* taste, smell.
 gesorgen, *ww.* trouble oneself; fear, dread.
 gespile, *wm.* play-mate, comrade.
 gesprēchen = sprēchen.
 gestān, *sv.* VI, remain.
 gesteine, *sn.* precious stones.
 gestern, *av.* yesterday.
 gestriten, *sv.* I, quarrel, fight, strive.
 gesūmen, *ww.* stay, delay, let one wait.

gesunde (gesunt), *aj.* healthy, alive.
 gesunt, *sm.* health.
 gesweigen, *wv.* bring to silence.
 geswîchen, *sv.* I, weary, tire ; leave in the lurch.
 getar = tar, see turren.
 getragen = tragen.
 getriulich, *aj.* through, owing to faithfulness.
 getriuten, *wv.* love, like, be fond of.
 getriuwe, *aj.* faithful, good.
 getriuwen, getrûwen, *wv.* trust, confide in.
 getræsten, *wv. refl.* bear with patience, forget.
 getrûren, *wv.* mourn, grieve, be downcast.
 getrûwen, see getriuwen.
 getuon = tuon.
 geturren, *pref. pres.* dare, venture.
 getweln, *wv.* dwell, stay.
 gevallen, *sv.* VII, fall to one's lot, please.
 gevangen(e), *wm.* prisoner, 50.
 gevar, *aj.* having colour.
 gevarn, *sv.* VI, go, travel ; wol gevarn, make a successful journey.
 gevolgen, *wv.* obey.
 gevûege, gefûege, *aj.* courteous, well-bred.
 gewæte, *sn.* clothing.
 gewâhenen, *sv.* VI, mention, 86.
 gewalt, *smf.* power, might, command.
 gewalteclich, *aj.* violent, mighty ; *av.* gewaltecliche.
 gewaltic, *aj.* powerful, mighty.
 gewant, *sn.* clothing.
 gewant (*pp.* of wenden), conditioned, circumstanced ; so gewante sache, of such a nature ; *ëz ist alsô gewant,*

it is important ; *ëz ist niht alsô gewant*, the matter is not so.
 gewar(e), *aj.* sensible, mindful.
 geweinen, *wv.* weep, cry.
 gewenen, *wv.* accustom.
 gewenken, *wv.* waver, vacillate ; bend, turn.
 gewërbe, *sn.* activity.
 gewërn, *wv.* perceive, perform.
 gewërren, *sv.* III, be troublesome, hinder.
 gewin (-nnes), *sm.* gain, advantage.
 gewinnen, *sv.* III, get, gain, obtain, receive, 81 ; *für sich gewinnen*, get for oneself.
 gewis (-sses), *aj.* certain, sure, 31.
 gewisse, *av.* surely, truly, certainly.
 gewonheit, *sf.* custom.
 gewürme, *sn.* worm, insect ; reptile, creeping creature.
 gezëmen, *sv.* IV, become, be-seem ; *mich gezimt dës*, that pleases me.
 gezierde, *sf.* adornment.
 gezwicken, *wv.* pinch, pull, pluck.
 giezen, *sv.* II, pour, 28, 78.
 gift, *sf.* gift, 28.
 giht, *third pers. sing.* of jëhen.
 gir, see gër.
 gîst = gibest, 37.
 gît = gibet, 37.
 glast, *sm.* splendour.
 glichnisse, *sn.* parable.
 glocke, *sf.* bell.
 gnanne, see genanne.
 golt, *sn.* gold, 3, 15.
 got, *sm.* God, 5, 10, 11.
 gotelich, *aj.* divine.
 goteshûs, *sn.* church, monastery.
 gotheit, *sf.* godhead.

götinne, *sf.* goddess, 5, 10.
 gotvar (-wes), *aj.* godlike, divine.
 gouch, *sm.* cuckoo; fool.
 grā (-wes), *aj.* grey, 55.
 graben, *sv.* VII, dig, 10, 12, 85.
 gram, *aj.* hostile.
 grap (-bes), *sn.* grave, 46.
 gras, *sn.* grass.
 grifen, *sv.* I, seize, grasp, touch, feel.
 grim (-mmes), *sm.* rage, fury.
 grimme (grimmic), *aj.* fearful, angry; great.
 grimmen, *sv.* III, rage.
 gris (grise), *aj.* grey, old, 55.
 grœzlich, *aj.* great.
 grœzlichen, *av.* greatly, very.
 grōz, *aj.* great, large, 9, 2, 57.
 grūen(e), *aj.* green, 5, 10, 55.
 grūezen, *ww.* greet, 39; also *sn.*
 grunt (-des), *sm.* bottom.
 gruoꝝ, *sm.* greeting, salutation.
 güete, *sf.* goodness, kindness, 5, 10.
 güetlich, *aj.* friendly; *av.* güetlichen.
 gugel, *sf.* cowl; cape, hood.
 guldin, *aj.* golden, 3, 15.
 gunēren, *ww.* dishonour, disgrace.
 gunnen, gūnnen (*pres. sing.* gan; *pret. gunde, pret. subj. gunde, günde*), *pret. pres.* grant, bestow, not to grudge, 9, 7, 93.
 guot, *aj.* good, 9, 2, 25, 55, 58; daz guot, wealth, property; ze guote, to the good.
 gürtel, *sm.* girdle, belt, sash.
 güsse, *sf.* inundation, 28.
 gütinne, *sf.* goddess, 48.

H

habe, *sf.* possession.
 habedanc, *sm.* thanks with words.
 haben (hān), *ww.* have, hold, 3, 99; haben sich an dēr witze kraft, collect all one's wits together.
 hacken, *sm.* hook, fetter; footprint.
 haft, *sm.* bond, fetter.
 hagel, *sm.* hail; misfortune, destruction.
 Hagene, *pn.*, 54.
 hāhen (hān), *sv.* VII, hang, 29, 30, 38, 87.
 halde, *wf.* slope, declivity.
 halm, *sm.* blade, stalk.
 halp (-bes), *aj.* half.
 halsen, *sv.* VII, embrace, 87.
 halten (halden), *sv.* VII, hold, keep; stop, keep from, 5, 10, 11, 40, 87.
 hān, see haben.
 handeln, *ww.* do, perform.
 handelunge, *sf.* action, 8.
 han(e), *wm.* cock, 9, 4, 31, 3.
 hant (*pl.* hende), hand, 49.
 hār, *sn.* hair.
 hārbant, *sn.* head-band.
 harnasch, *smn.* harness.
 harpfen, *ww.* play the harp.
 hart, *aj.* hard, 19.
 harte, *av.* very, very great, 60; *comp.* harter, more; more seriously.
 hase, *wm.* hare, 7, 30.
 haz, *sm.* hate, hatred, enmity; indignation, anger, wrath, 19.
 hazlich, *aj.* full of hate, hostile.
 hazzen, *ww.* hate.
 heben (heven), *sv.* VI, raise, 30, 86; sich (an) heben, betake oneself, begin.
 hei, *interj.* an exclamation of joy, grief, or wonder.

- heide**, *sf.* heath, uncultivated land; meadow.
heiden, *sm.* heathen, 9. 2.
heil, *sn.* happiness, welfare, good fortune.
heilant, *sm.* Saviour, 8.
heilic (-ec), holy, 7, 8, 55.
heiliggeist, *sm.* holy ghost.
heim, *smn.* home; **heime**, *av.* at home.
heimlich (-lich), *aj.* homely, familiar.
heimsuochen, *vv.* visit; attack with evil intent.
heimsuochunge, *sf.* disturbance of domestic peace and security.
heimvart, *sf.* homeward journey.
heiz, *aj.* hot, 31. 3.
heizen, *sv.* VII, call, be called, named; bid, 11, 17, 23. 1, 87.
hël (-les), *aj.* resounding.
hëlfe, *sf.* help.
helfen, *sv.* III, help, 3, 11, 12, 14. 2, 15, 23. 2, 81.
helle, *sf.* hell.
hellemör, *sm.* devil.
hellenöt, *sf.* necessity of hell.
helm, *sm.* helm, helmet, 11.
helme, *wm.* warrior.
hëln (with double *acc.*), *sv.* IV, hide, conceal.
helt (*gen.* **heldes**, **heledes**), *sm.* hero, protector, brave warrior.
hemede, *hemde*, *sn.* shirt.
hendelinc (-ges), *sm.* glove, 8.
hengen, *vv.* hang, 30.
henne, *swf.* hen, 31. 3.
hër, *hëre*, *aj.* and *av.* high, proud, haughty, agreeable, 55.
her, *sn.* army, host.
hër(e), *av.* hither, this way.
herbërge, *sf.* lodging.
hërlich, *aj.* agreeable, distinguished; *av.* **hërlichen**.
hërre, **hërre**, **hër**, *wm.* master, lord, 9. 3, 9. 6.
hërren, *vv.* to make as master.
hërsen, **hërsen**, *vv.* rule, govern, 9. 2.
herte (**hart**), *aj.* hard, difficult, 60; *av.* **harte** (**herte**), 60.
hërze, *wn.* heart, 7, 19, 23. 2, 50, 52.
hërzeleit, *sn.* heart-sore, grief.
hërzelich, *aj.* dear, affectionate.
hërzeliep, *sn.* heart's joy.
Hërzeloyde, *pn.* the name of Parzival's mother.
hërzenlich, *aj.* hearty, dear, affectionate; *av.* **hërzenlichen**.
hërzeriuwe, *sf.* great grief, sadness of heart, pain.
hërzesëre, *sf.* great sorrow, grief.
heven, see **heben**.
hey, *interj.* hey!
hie, **hier**, *av.* here, 5, 11, 39; **hie bī**, herewith, hereby; **hie vor(e)**, formerly, in former times.
hierunder, *av.* hereunder, 39.
himel, *sm.* heaven, sky.
himelisch, *aj.* heavenly, 8.
himelkrōne, *sf.* heavenly crown.
himelrīch, *sn.* kingdom of heaven.
hin, **hinnen**, *av.* from here, hence, away; **hin für**, without, out of doors; **hin heim**, away home.
hinder, *aj.* hinder; *prep.* behind, 59.
hindernisse, *snf.* hindrance, 8.
hinderste, *aj.* hindmost, 59.
hīnte, **hīnt**, **hīnaht**, *av.* tonight, 34.
hīrāt, *sm.* marrying, marriage.
hirte, *sm.* shepherd, 3, 43.
hirtelōs, *aj.* shepherdless.

hirz (OHG. *hiruz*) beside *hirz* (OHG. *hirz*), *sm.* stag.
hitze, *sf.* heat, warmth, 31. 3.
hiute, *av.* to-day; **hiute morgen**, this morning.
höch (*comp.* *hæher*, *superl.* *hæhst*, *hōhst*), *aj.* high, 5, 10, 11, 19, 34, 57, 60.
höchgeborn, *aj.* of gentle birth; noble.
höchgemuot, *aj.* noble, high-minded; lofty, proud; joyful, in high spirits.
höchgezît, *sf.* festival, feast, highest joy.
höchmuot, *sm.* consciousness, pride, well-being.
höchvart, *sf.* pride, haughtiness.
hæne, *aj.* haughty; contemptible.
hænen, *vv.* dishonour, calumniate.
hæren, *vv.* hear; be requisite, be necessary, require; listen; belong to, 5, 10, 11, 90.
hof (-ves), *sm.* court, 19, 30, 33, 42.
hogen, *vv.* think, consider.
hōhe, *hō*, *av.* highly, 60.
hōhgemüete, *sn.* joyousness, joyfulness.
hol, *aj.* hollow, 55.
holn, *vv.* fetch; **tiefen siuft holn**, sigh deeply.
holt (-des), *aj.* kind, affectionate, well-disposed.
holz, *sn.* wood, 19.
honic, **honec** (-ges), *smn.* honey, 29.
hornunc (-ges), *sm.* February; frost; chilblain.
houbet, *sn.* head, 5, 10.
houwen, *sv.* VII, hew, 36, 87.
hovelich, *aj.* courtly, courtlike.
hovelichen, *av.* courtly, in the manner of the court.

hübesch, *aj.* noble, courtly, chivalrous, 30.
hüeten, *vv.* protect, shield, hold, keep, guard.
huge, *sm.* thought, 43.
hügen, *vv.* consider, 15.
hulde, *sf.* grace, favour, kindness, permission, 10 note 1.
hundertste, *num.* hundredth, 62.
hundertstunt, *num.* hundred times.
hunger, *sm.* hunger.
hunt, **hundert**, *num.* hundred, 62, 64.
huobe, *sf.* a piece (hide) of land.
huofslac (*dat. pl.* *huofslegen*), *sm.* horseshoe.
huon (*pl.* *hüener*), *sn.* hen, 47.
huote, *sf.* care, guardianship.
hupfen, **hüpfen**, *vv.* hop, 10 note 3.
hūs (*pl.* *hiuser*), *sn.* house, 3, 5, 10, 11, 33.
hūt (*dat. pl.* *hiuten*), *sf.* skin, hide.

I

ich, *pr.* I, 23, 65.
ie, *av.* ever.
iedoch, *av.* however.
iegelich, **iegeslīch** (**ieglich**, **ieslīch**), *pr.* each, 71.
ieman, **iemen**, *pr.* anyone, no one, someone, somebody, 71.
iemer, **immer**, *av.* ever, always, at any time, never.
ietwēder, *pr. aj.* each of two, 71.
iewēder, *pr.* each, 71.
iewelīch, *pr.* each, 71.
iewiht, *pr.* anything, 71.
iezuo, *av.* now, directly.
iht, *pr.* anything; *av.* not, 71.
ilen, *vv.* hasten.
Imāne, *fpn.*
in, *prep.* in, into.
in, *pr. acc.* him.

in, in, av. in, into, from out here.

in, ine = *ich ne*, I not.

i'n = *ich in*.

ingesinde, sn. household, family; followers.

inne, imme = *in dēme*.

inneclīch, aj. inward; **av. in-neclīchen**, at heart.

innen, inne, av. within, inwardly; **inne bringen**, observe, let understand, convince; **inne wērdēn**, hear of, learn of.

ir, pr. her, their, ye, 71.

irdenisch, aj. earthly.

irdīn, aj. earthen, 14. 2.

irdisch, aj. earthly, 8.

irre, aj. astray; **dēs rīches irre**, astray in regard to the kingdom.

irren, wv. put out, confound, hinder, interrupt, stop.

irs = *ir ēs*.

iser, sn. iron, iron weapon, armour.

iuwer (iwer), pr. your, 67.

iz = *ēz*, 65 note 1.

J

jā, interj. forsooth.

jāmerlīch, aj. pitiable, sad, sorrowful; **av. jāmerlīche(n)**.

jagen, wv. pursue, follow, hunt.

jāmer, sm. grief, pain; **jāmers balt**, courageous in grief.

jāmerhaft, aj. painful, sorrowful.

jār, sn. year; age, 19.

jēhen, sv. V, say, speak; assure, grant, concede, 35, 83.

jener, pr. that, 68.

jenhalp, av. on that side, the other side.

jēsen, sv. V, ferment, 35, 83.

jēten, sv. V, weed, 35.

joch, av. and conj. also, even, yet.

jude, wv. Jew.

jugent, sf. youth, 49.

junc (-ges), aj. young, 19, 57.

juncfrouwe, wf. maiden.

junchērre, wv. young sir.

junger, sm. disciple.

K

kal (-wes), aj. bald, 55.

kāle, see *quāle*, 36.

kalp (pl. kälber), sn. calf, 47.

kalt, aj. cold.

kälte, sf. coldness, 11.

kamerære, sm. chamberlain, guard of the treasure, *or* bedroom.

kampflich, aj. warlike.

kapfen, wv. stare, gape, look on with astonishment.

Karnahkarnanz, Karnach-karnanz, pn. Count of Unterlec.

kastelān, sn. Castilian horse.

kēc, see *quēc*.

kein, pr. no, none, 71.

keiser, sm. emperor.

keiserlich, aj. imperial.

kelberīn, aj. of a calf.

kemenāte, sf. room, bed-room.

kennen, wv. know, 90.

kēren, wv. turn, go, 90; **sich kēren**, turn; **ze gote kēren**, apply to God's service.

kerze, kērze, wf. candle.

kiesen, sv. II, test, try, choose, elect, 5, 11, 18, 30, 33, 78.

kil, sm. quill, 9. 1, 42.

kindelīn, sn. little child, 8.

kindisch, aj. childish, 8.

kinne, sn. chin.

kint (-des), sn. child, 33.

kintlich, aj. childish.

kirchhof, sm. churchyard.

kīt = *quīt*, 36.

kiusch(e), *aj.* chaste, modest, pure, spotless; maidenly.

kiuwen, *sv.* II, chew, 16 note, 36, 79.

klage, *sf.* complaint, lamentation.

klagen, *wv.* complain, bewail, 92; **klagedez hërze**, mournful heart.

klār, *aj.* clear, bright, beautiful, pure.

klē (-wes), *sm.* clover, trefoil.

klēben, *wv.* stick, 92.

kleiden, *wv.* clothe, dress.

klein(e), *aj.* little, neat, insignificant; *av.* kleine.

kleit (*pl.* kleit or kleider), *sn.* dress.

klieben, *sv.* II, cleave, 18, 78.

klingen, *sv.* III, ring, toll.

klōsenære, *sm.* hermit, re-cluse.

klōster, *sn.* cloister, monastery.

klūs, *sf.* cell, hermitage.

knabe, *wm.* boy, youth, 31. 1.

knappe, *wm.* a youth who has not yet become a knight, 31. 1.

knēht, *sm.* boy, candidate for knighthood, attendant; warrior.

knēten, *sv.* V, knead, 83.

knie (*gen.* kniewes), *sn.* knee, 3, 23. 2, 36, 46.

komen, *sv.* IV (*pres.* kume, *kum*; *pret.* quam, *kom*; *pret. subj.* quæme, *pp.* komen), come, 36, 82.

kopf, *sm.* head.

kōr, *sm.* choir.

korder, **körder**, see **quërder**, 36.

korn, *sn.* corn, 23. 2.

corp (-bes), *sm.* basket.

koufen, **köufen**, *wv.* buy, acquire; earn, 10, 90.

krā, **krāwe**, *sf.* crow.

kraft, *sf.* strength, might; multitude.

kranc, *sm.* weakness.

kranc, *aj.* impotent, weak; little; worthless.

kranz, *sm.* garland, wreath.

krēatiure, **krēatūr(e)**, *sf.* creature.

kreftic, *aj.* strong, powerful.

kriec (-ges), *sm.* resistance, strife, quarrel.

kriechen, *sv.* II, creep, crawl, 78.

Kriembilt, *pn.* 54.

krippe (**kribbe**), *swf.*, manger (cradle), crib, 26.

Krist, *sm.* Christ.

kristen, *aj.* and *sb.* christian.

kristenheit, *sf.* christianity, christian faith.

kriuze, *sn.* cross.

krönen, *wv.* crown, adorn.

krōne, *swf.* crown.

kuchen, **küchen**, *sf.* kitchen, 10 note 3.

küele, *aj.* cool.

küen(e), *aj.* bold, warlike.

kumber, *sm.* grief, trouble.

kumberliche, *av.* with grief, with oppression.

kumbersal, *sn.* distress, 8.

kūme, *av.* scarcely, hardly.

künde, *sf.* acquaintance, knowledge; **künde haben** (with *gen.*), know.

kunde, see **künnen**.

künden, *wv.* announce, promise.

kündic, *aj.* known.

küneclich, *aj.* kingly, royal.

künic (-ec), *sm.* king, 7, 8, 29.

künne, race, generation; relationship, 7, 10, 46.

kün(n)egin(ne), **künegīn**, *sf.* queen, king's daughter, 8, 48.

künnen, **kunnen** (*pret.* kunde, **konde**), *pret. pres.* know, understand, can, 93.

kunst, *sf.* art, skill, 19.

kunt (-des), *aj.* known.

kuo (*pl.* **küje**, **küewe**), *sf.* cow, 49.
kupfer, *sn.* copper, 31. 2.
kurz, *aj.* short, small; **vor kurzer stunt**, recently.
kurzewile, *sf.* pastime, entertainment.
kus (-sses), *smn.* kiss, 32. 1.
küssen, *vv.* kiss, 20, 32. 2, 90.

L

lā, *imperative* of **lāzen**, q.v.
lachen, *vv.* laugh, laugh at; also *sn.*
laden, *sv.* VI, load, 85.
laden, *vv.* invite, 92.
lære, *aj.* empty, 3, 5, 10, 11, 55.
Lähelin, *mfn.*
lam, *aj.* lame, weak in the limbs.
lamp (*pl.* **lember**), lamb, 5, 10, 11, 33. 47.
lān, see **lāzen**.
lanc, *aj.* long, 10, 60; *av.* lange, 60.
lanclēben, *sn.* long life.
lanclīp, *sm.* long life.
lant (-des), *sn.* land, country.
lantliut, *sn.* country folk, vassalage; *pl.* inhabitants.
lantrēhtbuoch, *sn.* book of common or land laws.
lantsæze, *wm.* freeholder.
last, *sm.* burden.
laster, *sn.* ignominy, disgrace.
laz (-zzes), *aj.* feeble, languid, faint, exhausted; weary.
lāzen, **lān**, *sv.* VII, let, leave, give up; stop, avoid, 87, 99; **lān niht ze wē sīn**, not to worry too much; **lāzen sīn**, cease, stop; **lā stān**, cease! stop!
lēben, *vv.* live, cause to live, 92.
lēben, *sn.* life.
lēbendic (-ec), *aj.* living, alive.

legen (**leggen**, **lecken**), *vv.* lay, place, put, 31. 3, 92; **arbeit dar an legen**, expend much trouble on a thing.
leh (= **le** or **li**) **cons.** Count.
lēhen, *sn.* feudal tenure, loan, fee, feod.
leich, *sm.* song consisting of strophes of unequal length.
leide, *av.* painfully, sorrowfully; *comp.* **leider**, greater pain, grief, trouble.
leiden, *vv.* be repugnant, odious, or offensive; render disagreeable, do harm; **mir leidet ēz**, it is repugnant to me.
leider, *av.* and *interj.* unfortunately, alas!
leie, *wm.* layman.
leischieren, *vv.* give a horse its head.
leisten (*pret. subj.* **leiste** = **leistete**), *vv.* follow the trace of, follow, perceive; **leisten geselleschaft**, accompany.
leit (-des), *aj.* sorrowful, bitter, painful, disagreeable; hateful, vexatious.
leit (-des), *sn.* grief, pain.
leit = **leget**, 37.
leiten (*pret.* **leite**), *vv.* to lead, 5, 11, 30, 32. 4, 90.
leitestērne, *wm.* loadstar.
lenge, *sf.* length, 10.
lēre, *sf.* teaching, instruction, precept, guidance, advice; saying.
lēren (**lērn**), *vv.* teach, 5, 11, 17.
lēren, *vv.* learn.
leschen, *sv.* IV, be extinguished, go out, 11, 82.
leschen, *vv.* extinguish, put out.
lēsen, *sv.* V, gather, read, 33, 83.
leste, *aj.* last, 9. 5, 23. 1.

lesterlich, *aj.* disgraceful, ignominious.
letzen, *vv.* injure, prejudice; forsake.
lezzeste, leste, *aj.* last, 59.
liden, *sv.* I, suffer, endure, 30, 76.
liebe, *sf.* love, joy.
lieben, *vv.* give pleasure, gladden; present with.
liegen, *sv.* II, lie, tell a lie, 5, 78.
licht, *sn.* light, 16.
lieht, *aj.* bright; *av.* liehte.
liep (-bes), *aj.* dear, pleasant, friendly, 5, 11; *sn.* what is lovely; dearest joy; lover.
liet (-des), *sn.* song, poem.
ligen (liggen, licken), *sv.* V, lie, lie down, 14. 2, 31. 3, 84.
lihen, *sv.* I, lend, 12, 76.
lihte, *aj.* light, easy, worthless; *av.* easily, perhaps; **lihte noch**, still now-a-days.
lin, *line*, *swf.* window with balcony.
linde, *wf.* linden-tree.
lip (-bes), *sm.* life, body, person, 33.
list, *sm.* prudence, wisdom, advice; means, art; artfulness, cunning.
list = **liges**(t), 37.
lit (-des), *sn.* limb, member.
līt = **liget**, 37.
liuhten, *vv.* light, shine, shed lustre, 16.
liut, *sn.* folk, people, army, 5, 11.
liuten, *vv.* ring.
liuterlich, *av.* expressly, quite, entirely.
Liutpolt, *pn.* Leopold of Austria.
lobelich, *aj.* praiseworthy.
loben, *vv.* praise, 92.
lobesam, *aj.* praiseworthy, glorious.

loch (*pl.* löcher), *sn.* hole, 5, 10, 31. 3.
løsen, *vv.* loose, 33, 90.
lōn, *sm.* pay, reward.
lōnen, *vv.* reward.
lop (-bes), *smn.* praise, glorification; price.
lōsen, *vv.* be rid, released of; **hin ze einem lōsen**, flatter.
lōt, *sn.* weight.
lōufel, *sm.* runner, 5, 10.
loufen, *sv.* VII, run, 5, 11, 87.
lougen, *sn.* a denying, denial; **āne lougen**, truly.
loup (*pl.* löuber), *sn.* foliage, leaf, 5, 10, 11.
lūchen, *sv.* II, shut, 80.
lücke, *swf.* gap, hole, 31. 3.
luft, *smf.* air, firmament.
luoder, *sn.* bait, 46.
lūt, *aj.* loud; **lūt wërden** (*c. gen.*), give to understand, mention, be heard.
lūte, *av.* aloud, loudly.
lūter, *aj.* clear, bright, 9. 2; *av.* **lūterliche**.
lützel, *aj.* and *av.* little, small, 31. 2, 58; **lützel ieman**, nobody, no one; as *indecl. sb.* with *gen.*, little.

M

mac, see **mügen**.
māc (-ges), *sm.* relation.
machen, *vv.* make.
mære, *sn.* story, tidings, report.
mære, *aj.* known, renowned, 10.
magedīn, *sn.* maid, maiden, 8.
magen, **megen**, see **mügen**.
maget (*pl.* magede, megde), *sf.* girl, maiden, 5, 10, 37, 49.
maht (*pl.* mähte), *sf.* strength, power, might, 5, 11.
mahtu = **maht dū**.
mālen, *vv.* paint, draw.
maln, *sv.* VI, grind, 85.

- man**, *sm.* man, 3, 32. 1, 45; *pr.* one, 71.
- manbære**, *aj.* marriageable.
- māne**, *wm.* moon.
- manen**, *vv.* urge on, remind, admonish.
- manic**, **manec** (**manc**), *aj.* many, much, 8; *pr.* many a, 71; **maneger hande**, **slahte**, *or leie*, in many ways, manifoldly; **maneger vil**, very many.
- manicvalt**, *aj.* manifold, variegated.
- manlich**, *aj.* manly, brave, 5, 10.
- mantel**, *sm.* mantle, 42.
- manunge**, *sf.* exhortation, admonition.
- marc**, *sf.* half pound of gold *or* silver.
- marder**, *sm.* marten; skin of a marten.
- market**, *sm.* market, 9. 2.
- marter**, *sf.* martyr; torture.
- māze**, *sf.* measure, manner; moderation, propriety, fitness; **ze einer māze**, little, moderate; **ze māze**, fairly, sufficiently; **ze rēhter māze**, to the right length.
- mē**, **mēre**, *aj.* and *av.* more, further, 5, 17, 39, 61; as *indecl. sb.* with *gen.* more.
- meie**, *wm.* May; spring of the year, 35.
- meien**, *vv.* become May; be joyful, make merry.
- meier** (**meiger**), *sm.* farmer.
- meierin**, *sf.* farmer's wife.
- meinen**, *vv.* mean, mean well, have in view; cause.
- meist**, **meiste**, *aj.* and *av.* most, greatest, 58, 61.
- meister**, *sm.* master.
- meisterschaft**, *sf.* skill in an art, mastery, order.
- meit** = **maget**, 37.
- meizen**, *sv.* VII, cut, 87.
- mēl** (**-wes**), *sn.* meal, 36, 46.
- mēlden**, *vv.* announce, make known; betray.
- mēldunge**, *sf.* announcement, 8.
- Meljahkantz**, *pn.*
- mēlken**, *sv.* III, milk.
- mensch(e)**, *wsmn.* man ('homo').
- menschenbluot**, *sn.* human blood.
- menschlich**, *aj.* human.
- mer**, *sn.* sea.
- mēre**, see **mē**.
- mēren**, *vv.* increase.
- mērer**, **mēr(r)e**, *aj.* more, 58.
- merken** (*pret.* **marhte**), *vv.* observe, perceive, understand.
- merze**, *wm.* March.
- mēsse**, *sf.* mass; **mēssezīt**, *sf.* time for mass.
- mēte**, *sm.* mead, 43.
- mettine**, *sf.* matins, primes.
- mēzzen**, *sv.* V, measure, 32. 1, 32. 4, 83.
- mēzzzer**, *sn.* knife.
- michel**, *aj.* great; **michels**, *av.* by far, 55, 58.
- mīden**, *sv.* I, avoid, shun, do without, 30, 76.
- miete**, *sf.* pay, reward, present, 5, 11.
- milch**, *sf.* milk, 9. 1.
- milt** (**-des**), *aj.* generous; *av.* **miltliche**, **miltecliche**.
- milte**, *aj.* generous, bounteous.
- milte**, *sf.* liberality, generosity; grace, favour.
- min**, *av.* less, 61.
- mīn**, *pr.* my, 67.
- minne**, *sf.* love; loving memory, remembrance.
- minneclīch**, *aj.* dear, lovely, loving, kind.
- minnen**, *vv.* love, value, 92.
- minner**, **minre**, **min**, *aj.* and

av. less, 9. 3, 57, 58; as *indecl. sb.* with *gen.* less.

minnest, *min(ne)ste*, *aj.* and *av.* least, 9. 5, 57, 58, 61.

mirs = *mir* *ës*.

miselsuht, *sf.* leprosy.

mislich, *aj.* sundry, uneven, different.

misselingen, *sv.* III, not to succeed.

missesagen, *vv.* deceive, lie.

missetât, *sf.* misdeed, offence.

missewende, *sf.* mistake, fault, blot.

mist, *sm.* dung, dirt.

mit, *mite*, *prep.* and *av.* with, by, through, 9. 6; **mit sorgen**, sorrowfully; **mit triuwen**, faithful, faithfully; **mit willen**, gladly, willingly; **mit witze**, reasonably, sensibly, cleverly, prudently, wisely; **mit zûhten**, politely.

mitte, *aj.* middle; *av.* **mitten**.

morgen (*morne*), *sm.* morning, 42; **dës morgens**, in the morning.

mortlich, *aj.* murderous; *av.* **mortliche**.

mortmeile, *aj.* blood-stained, blood-guilty.

motte, *swf.* moth, 24.

müedinc, *sm.* unhappy man, 8.

müelich, *aj.* and *av.* painful, troublesome.

müen (*müejēn*, *müewēn*), *vv.* torment, trouble, distress, grieve, 35, 90.

müeterlich, *aj.* motherly.

müeterlīn, *sn.* little mother, 10.

müezen, *pret.-pres.* (*pres. sing.* **muoz**, *pret.* **muoste**, **muose**), *must*, 28, 93.

müezic, *aj.* idle, at leisure.

müg(e)lich, *aj.* possible.

mügen, **mugen**, **magen**, **megen** (*pres. sing.* **mac**, *pret.* **mohte**,

pret. subj. **möhte**), *pret.-pres.* **may**, **can**, 10, 11, 28, 93.

mugge, **mügge** (*mucke*, *mücke*), *wf.* midge, fly, 10 note 3, 20.

mül, *sf.* mill.

mül, *sn.* mule.

münich, *sm.* monk.

münster, *sn.* minster.

munt (-des), *sm.* mouth.

muot, *sm.* sense, mind, spirits, mood, feeling, courage, disposition, sentiment; **riches muotes wërden**, be in good spirits.

muoten, *vv. c. gen.* desire, long for.

muoter, *sf.* mother, 10, 11, 49.

N

nac (-ckes), *sm.* back part of the head.

nāch, *prep.* after, according to, on account of, at, for, to, 34; **nach dēm guote**, about wealth or money; **nāch ēren**, honourably; **nāch sīnen beinen**, made to fit his legs; **nāch wünsche**, to perfection, all that one could wish for; **vil nāch**, nearly.

nacket, *aj.* naked.

nagel, *sm.* nail, 9. 2, 44.

nagen, *sv.* VI, gnaw, 85.

nāhe (**nāch**), *av.* near, nigh, 34; **nāhe tragen**, take to heart; **nāhe gān**, go closely, touch; **nāhen**, near by.

nāhen, *vv.* draw near, come near, approach, be near.

nāhegebüre, *wm.* neighbour.

naht, *sf.* night, 19, 49; *av.* **nahtes**, by night.

nahtigale, **nahtegal(e)**, *sf.* nightingale.

nam(e), *wm.* name, position, 3, 9. 1, 9. 4.

namen, *wv.* name, 92.
 napf, *sm.* basin, 31.
 nar, *sf.* food, 48.
 nāt, *sf.* seam.
 naz (-zges), *aj.* wet, 31. 3.
 ne, n', *neg. particle*, generally used before the verb with and without *niht*, *not*, 108.
 nēbel, *sm.* fog, mist.
 nehein, *pr.* no, none, 71.
 neigen, *wv.* bow, bend down.
 neizwēr, *pr.* anyone, 70.
 nēmen, *sv.* IV, take; *c. dat.* pers. take away, rob, 5, 7, 10, 11, 12, 14. 2, 74, 82.
 nennen, *wv.* name, mention the name of, 32. 2, 40, 90.
 nern (*nerigen*, *nerjen*), *wv.* nourish, rescue, keep alive, *refl.* subsist on, 9. 1, 30, 35, 90.
 nest, nēst, *sn.* nest, 11.
 netze, *sn.* net, 46.
 netzen, *wv.* make wet, 31. 3.
 nēve, *wn.* nephew, 33.
 nīden, *sv.* I, hate, envy, 76.
 nider, *av.* down; *sich nider lāzen*, settle, establish oneself.
 nīdetāt, *sf.* spiteful action.
 nie, *av.* never.
 nieman, niemen, *pr.* nobody, no one, 71.
 niemēr (*niemer*, *nimer*, *nimmer*), *av.* never.
 niender, *av.* by no means.
 niene, *av.* not, not at all.
 niesen, *sv.* II, sneeze, 78.
 nieten (*refl.* with *gen.*), *wv.* be eager or zealous for.
 niezen = *geniezen*.
 niftel, *sf.* niece, 33.
 niht, nieht, niet, *av.* not; *pr.* nothing, 71; *indecl. sb. c. gen.* nothing.
 nine = *niene*, not at all.
 nīt (-des), *sm.* hatred, anger, hostility.
 niun, *num.* nine, 62.
 niunte (-de), *num.* ninth, 62.

niunzēhen, *num.* nineteen, 62.
 niunzēhende, *num.* nineteenth, 62.
 niunzic (-ec), *num.* ninety, 62.
 niunzigeste, *num.* ninetyeth, 62.
 niuwan (*niwan*, *niuwen*), *av.* nothing but, only; *cj.* except, except that.
 niuwe, *aj.* new, 16 note, 55.
 niuwet, *av.* not.
 noch, *av.* still; *noch en noch*, neither—nor.
 Norgāls, *pn.* the country belonging to Herzeloide.
 nōt, *sf.* need, danger, trouble, distress.
 nōthaf, *aj.* needy, poor.
 nōtic, *aj.* in distress, hasty.
 nōtnunft, *sf.* abduction by violence.
 nū (nu), *av.* now; *nu wol dan*, well then be off there!
 nutz (nuz), *sm.* use, advantage.
 nütze, *aj.* useful.
 nutzen, nützen, *wv.* to use, 10 note 3.

O

ob, obe, op, *prep.* and *av.* over, above; *conj.* if, in case that, whether, 9. 6.
 oben(e), *av.* from above, above.
 ober, *aj.* upper, 59.
 oberste, oberist, oberest, *aj.* highest, uppermost, 8, 59.
 oder, ode, *conj.* or.
 offen, *aj.* and *av.* open, 23. 1.
 offenbāre, *av.* openly.
 ofte, *av.* often.
 ohse, *wm.* ox.
 opfer, *sn.* offering.
 orden, *sm.* order, rule; rank; *rīters orden*, knightly order.
 ordenunge, *sf.* order, rule.
 ōre, *wn.* ear, 5, 11, 50.
 op = ob.
 Österrīch, *pn.* Austria.
 ot, see *ēht*.

ouch, ōch, *av.* also; hence-forward.

ouge, *wn.* eye, 3, 5, 11, 50.

ougen, *wv.* show, 10, 90.

ougenweide, *sf.* delight of the eyes, sight, appearance.

ouwē, *sf.* water; meadow, 10.

owē, ouwē, ōwī, *interj.* woe!

alas! ah!; owē mir mīnes leides! alas! for my grief;

ōwī wan, used to express a wish: would that; owē dēs, alas for that!

ōwol, *interj.* well!

P

palas, *sn.* hall.

paradys, *sn.* paradise.

pfaffe, *wm.* priest.

pfeller, pfellel, *sm.* carpet, silk cloth.

pfennic, pfenninc (-ges), *sm.* penny, 29.

pfert (-des), *sn.* horse.

pflege, *sf.* care, fostering.

pflegen (phlegen), *sv.* V, be accustomed, use, practise, care for, 83.

pfluoc, phluoc (-ges), *sm.* plough; ploughman.

pfunt, *sn.* pound, 23. 2.

phat (-des), *smn.* path, foot-way.

phel (phelle) = pfeller.

Philip, Philippes (*dat.* Philippe), *pn.* Philip.

phleger, *sm.* guardian, protector.

pin = bin.

pīnen (with sich and ūf), *wv.* exert oneself for.

plān, *smf.*, plāne, *sf.* plain, open space, meadow.

planēte, *wm.* planet.

porte, *sf.* door, gate.

portenære, *sm.* porter, door-keeper.

prēdige, *wf.* sermon.

prīs, *sm.* praise, renown, reputation; price.

prisen, *wv.* value, praise, extol.

prophēte, *wm.* prophet.

prüstelin, *sn.* breast, chest.

Q

quāle (kāle), *sf.* torture, 36.

quēc (kēc), *aj.* quick, alive, 19, 36.

quēden, *sv.* V, say, 19, 36.

quērder (korder, kōrder), *smn.* bait, 36.

quicken (kücken), *wv.* enliven, 36.

quīst = quides(t), 37.

R

rabe, *wm.* raven, 31. 1.

rāche, *sf.* revenge, punishment. ragen, *wv.* strike, knock, hit.

rappe, *wm.* raven, 31. 1.

rasch (rasche), *aj.* quick, 55.

rat (-des), *sn.* wheel, 47.

rāt, *sm.* (*pl.* rāte), advice, care, resolution; rāt wēden, be helped.

rāten, *sv.* VII, advise, devise, 87.

rē (-wes), *smn.* corpse; bier, hearse, 42, 46.

rēchen, *sv.* IV, avenge, punish.

rēde, *sf.* speech, answer, story, saying.

rēgen, *sm.* rain, 42.

rēht, *aj.* and *sn.* right, proper, just; right, duty, law.

rēhte, *av.* rightly, properly; very.

reine, rein, *aj.* pure, spotless, perfect, 55.

reise, *sf.* journey, march.

reizen, *wv.* irritate; entice, allure.

rennen, *wv.* run, 90.

ribbalin, *sn.* foot-covering, shoe.

rīben, *sv.* I, rub, 76.

rīch, **rīche**, *aj.* powerful, mighty, noble, great, fine, rich, free, 55.
rīche, *sn.* kingdom.
rīcheit, *sf.* wealth, power.
rīchen, *ww.* make rich, enrich, present with.
rīchsen, *ww.* rule, 9. 2.
riechen, *sv.* II, smell, 78.
rīfe, *wm.* hoar-frost.
rigel, *sm.* bolt, bar.
rihten, *ww.* put right, confirm, judge; *refl.* get up.
rinc (-ges), *sm.* ring.
ringe, *aj.* easy, light, small; consumed.
ringen, *sv.* III, strive, struggle; busy oneself, wrestle; **ringen nāch**, strive for or after.
rinnen, *sv.* III, run, 20, 31, 32. 1, 81.
rint (*pl.* rinder), *sn.* cow, heifer.
rīsen, *sv.* I, fall, 30, 76.
rīten, *sv.* I, ride, 76.
rīter, **ritter**, *sm.* rider; knight, the name of knight.
rīterlich, *aj.* knightly.
rīterschaft, *sf.* knighthood, customs and manners of knights.
ritterlichen, *av.* in knightly manner.
riuschen, *ww.* rush, move noisily.
riuten, *ww.* root out, clear the land, bring the land into cultivation.
riuwe, *sf.* sadness, grief, pity, regret, 16 note.
riuwen, *ww.* grieve, grieve for, regret.
riuwen, *sv.* II, pain, grieve, regret, 16 note, 78.
riuwic, *aj.* sorrowful, repentant.
rivier, *sm.* brook, stream.
rocke, **rogge**, *wm.* rye, 31. 1.

Rōme, *pn.* Rome.
rōr, *sn.* reed.
ros, *sn.* horse.
rōt, *aj.* red, 19.
rouben, *ww.* rob.
rouch, *sm.* smoke.
roufen, *ww.* pluck, pull up, pull at, lug; *refl.* tear or pull out one's hair.
roup (-bes), *sm.* robbery; **roubes**, *av.* by robbery.
rūch, *aj.* raw; coarse.
rücke, **rügge**, *swm.* back.
rūejen, *ww.* row, 90.
rüemen, *ww.* praise, commend.
rüeren (*pret.* ruorte), *ww.* drive, urge on; with **ros** understood: run.
rūm, *sm.* room, 11.
rūmen, *ww.* make room, 10, 40.
ruochen, *ww.* trouble oneself about a thing, observe; with *gen.* deign, will, wish.
ruofen, *sv.* VII, call, 5, 11, 87.

S

sā, **sān**, *av.* presently, at once, forthwith, immediately, quickly.
sache, *sf.* thing.
sactuoch, *sn.* sacking, sackcloth.
sæjen, **sæwen**, **sæn**, *sow*, 10, 35, 90.
sælde, *sf.* happiness, good fortune, excellence, blessedness, 9. 2.
sælic, **sælec** (-ges), *aj.* blessed, happy, 7, 8.
sælikeit, *sf.* blessedness.
sage, *sf.* saying, statement, report; **nāch sage**, by hearsay.
sagen, *ww.* say, tell, 37, 92;
sagen mære, relate what has happened.
sal, *sm.* room, hall; house.

salben, *vv.* anoint.
 Salomōn, *sm.* Solomon.
 salz, *sn.* salt, 23. 2.
 salzen, *sv.* VII, salt, 87.
 —same, sam, *av.* so, as, like,
 just as, even as, 69.
 samīt, *sm.* velvet.
 samt, *av.* together.
 sān, see sā.
 sanc(-ges), *sm.* song, singing.
 sanfte, *av.* softly, slowly, pleasantly, 60.
 sant (-des), *sm.* sand, 42.
 sant(e), *aj.* holy; holy one.
 sarc, *sm.* coffin.
 sarken, serken, *vv.* put into
 the coffin.
 sāt, *sf.* seed, 5, II.
 satzt(e), *pret.* of setzen.
 —sāze, *sf.* ambush, trap, snare.
 sazte, *pret.* of setzen.
 —schächære, *sm.* robber.
 schade, *wm.* injury, loss.
 schaden (*pret.* schadete, schā-
 te), *vv.* injure, harm.
 schāf, *sn.* sheep.
 schaffen, *sv.* VI, create, exer-
 cise, institute, 85.
 schaffen, *vv.* do, perform, pro-
 vide.
 schal (-les), *sm.* sound, noise,
 loud tone; singing.
 schalchāft, *aj.* malicious, mis-
 chievous.
 —schallen, *vv.* be noisy; bluster;
 exult, boast, swagger.
 schame, *wf.* shame.
 schämlich, *aj.* shameful, 10.
 schamen, *vv.* shame; *c. gen.*
 be ashamed, 9. 4.
 schande, *sf.* disgrace, disgrace-
 fulness, shamefulness, shame-
 ful or disgraceful act.
 schapel, *sn.* garland, 46.
 schar, *sf.* crowd, flock, 48.
 scharpf, *aj.* sharp.
 —schart, *aj.* jagged, hacked,
 hewn, battered.

schate (*gen.* schat(e)wes),
sm. shade, shadow, 36, 43.
 schaz (*gen.* schatzes), *sm.*
 treasure, 19, 23. 2.
 schedeliche, *av.* injuriously.
 scheiden, *sv.* VII, sever, sepa-
 rate, deprive; go away, 87;
 sich scheiden, come to an
 end, be decided.
 schelch (*gen.* schөлhes), *aj.*
 askew, 34.
 schelle, *wf.* little bell.
 schölten, *sv.* III, abuse, revile,
 mock, 81; also as *sn.*
 schemelich, *aj.* disgraceful.
 schepfen (*pret.* schuof, *pp.*
 geschaffen), *sv.* VI, create,
 23. 2, 28, 31. 3.
 schepfære, schepfer, *sm.* crea-
 tor, 8.
 schörn, *sv.* IV, shear, 82.
 schicken (with *acc.*), *vv.* be-
 come, suit, fit.
 schieben, *sv.* II, shove, 78.
 schiere, *av.* quickly, soon.
 schiezen, *sv.* II, shoot; *sn.*
 shooting, 10 note 3, 78.
 schif (-ffes), *sn.* ship, 19, 32. 1.
 schilt (-des), *sm.* shield, pro-
 tection; schildes ambet,
 knight-service, chivalry.
 schimpfen, *vv.* make fun of,
 jest; also as *sn.*
 schin, *aj.* visible, clear; schin
 tuon, make clear, show; *sm.*
 splendour.
 schinen, *sv.* I, shine, become
 evident or manifest, 76.
 schirmen, *vv. c. dat.* protect.
 schiuhē, *vv.* fear, shun.
 schönde, *sf.* beauty.
 schöne, *aj.* beautiful, fine, 3, 5,
 9. 2, 55, 60.
 schöne, *sf.* beauty, 3, 48.
 schönen, *vv.* make beautiful.
 schöne, *av.* beautifully, 60.
 schouwen, *vv.* see, behold,
 look, inspect, survey.

- schrëcken**, *sv.* IV, frighten, 82.
schrībære, *sm.* scribe, 8.
schrīben, *sv.* I, write, 5, 76.
schriēn (*scriēn*), *sv.* I, cry, cry out, scream; croak, 77; also as *sn.*
schrift, *sf.* writing (Bible).
schrīn, *sm.* box.
schrīnden, *sv.* III, split, 81.
schrīt, *sm.* step, 44.
schrunde, [*wf.* scratch, tear, slit.
schūften, *wv.* gallop, canter.
schulde, *sf.* reason, cause; **von welhen schulden**, wherefore.
schuldic (-*ec*), *aj.* guilty, 10 note 1; **schuldic sin**, owe.
schuoch (*gen.* *schuohes*), *sm.* shoe, 34.
schupfen, **schūpfen**, *wv.* push, 10 note 3.
schuz (-*tzes*), *sm.* protection.
se = sie.
sē (-*wes*), *sm.* sea, lake, 3, 42.
sēgenen, *wv.* bless, 90.
sēhen, *sv.* V, see, look, 9. 4 note, 34, 74 note, 83.
sēhs, *num.* six, 62.
sēhste, *num.* sixth, 62.
sēh(s)zēhen, *num.* sixteen, 62.
sēh(s)zehēnde, *num.* sixteenth, 62.
sēh(s)zic (-*ec*), *num.* sixty, 62.
sēh(s)zigeste, *num.* sixtieth, 62.
seist = sages(*t*), 37.
seit = saget, 37.
seite, *wm.* string.
seite = sagete.
seitenspil, *sn.* playing of stringed instrument.
sēle, *sf.* soul, 5, 11, 17, 48.
sēln, *wv.* hand over, 90.
sēlp (-*bes*), *pr.* self.
sēlten, *av.* seldom.
sēltsæne, *aj.* rare, strange.
senden (*pref.* *sante*), *wv.* send, 32. 3, 40, 90.
senede, **sende**, *pp.* of **senen**, painfully longing, yearning, love-sick, 29.
senen, *wv. refl.* fret oneself, be sick at heart.
senfte, *sf.* softening.
senfte, *aj.* soft, gentle, tender, mild, easy; quiet, 55, 60.
senften, *wv.* appease, soften.
senken, *wv.* sink, 19, 90.
sēr, *smm.* pain; grief, trouble; sore.
sēre, *av.* sorely, violently; very.
setzen (*pref.* *satzte*), *wv.* put, set, place, appoint, 19, 23. 1, 31. 3, 90.
si, sī, siu, sie, *pr.* she, 65.
siben, *num.* seven, 62.
sibende, *num.* seventh, 62.
sibenzēhen, *num.* seventeen, 62.
sibenzēhende, *num.* seventeen, 62.
sibenzic (-*ec*), seventy, 62.
sibenzigste, seventieth, 62.
sich, *refl. pr.* himself, themselves, 66.
sicherheit, *sf.* assurance.
sicherlich(e), *av.* certainly, surely, assuredly, 8.
side, *sf.* silk.
sider, *av.* since, afterwards.
siech, *aj.* sick, ill, 5.
siecheit, *sf.*, **siechtuom**, *sm.* sickness.
sieden, *sv.* II, seethe, 12, 18, 78.
Sīfrit, *pn.*, 54.
sige (*sic*), *sm.* victory, 43.
sigen, *sv.* I, sink, 76.
sigenunft, *sf.* victory.
sihte, *aj.* shallow.
silber, *sm.* silver.
sim = si im.
sin, *sm.* sense, mind, feeling; courage.
sīn, *pr.* his; **sīn sēlbes**, of himself, 5, 11, 67.

- sīn**, *anom. v.* be, 97.
sin = **si in**.
sincwise, *sf.* song.
singen, *sv.* III, sing; also as *sn.* song, lay, 10 note 2, 33, 81.
sinken, *sv.* III, sink, 23. 2, 81.
sinne, *sf.* sense, mind; **ze sinne wider komen**, recover consciousness, become conscious again.
sinneclīch, *aj.* sensible, reasonable.
sinnelōs, *aj.* unconscious.
sinnen, *sv.* III, reflect, 81.
sint = **sīt**.
sippe (*sibbe*), *sf.* consanguinity, relationship, 26, 31. 3.
sīt (*sīd*, *sint*), *av.* and *conj.* afterwards, since, because.
site, *sm.* custom, habit; bearing, demeanour, behaviour, 43.
sīte, *swf.* side.
sitzen (*pret.* **saz**, *pp.* **gesēzzēn**), sit, 14. 2, 23. 2, 31. 3, 84.
siz = **sī ēz**.
slac (-ges), *sm.* blow; misfortune, 44.
slāf, *sm.* sleep.
slāfen, *sv.* VII, sleep, 5, 11, 19, 23. 1, 74 note, 87.
slahēn, *sv.* VI, beat, strike, slay, 10, 30, 85.
slahte, *sf.* manner; race.
slēht, *aj.* straight; straightforward, honest.
sliezen, *sv.* II, close, shut.
smac (-ckes), *sm.* taste, smell.
smācheit, *sf.* shameful treatment.
smæhe, *aj.* little, despicable, disgusting.
smal, *aj.* small, little.
smecken, *vv.* taste, 90.
smēr (-wes), *smn.* fat, 36, 47.
smērze, *wm.* pain, 19.
smiegen, *sv.* II, bend, incline; press close.
smielen, *vv.* smile.
smirwen, *vv.* smear, 36.
smit (-des), *sm.* smith, metal worker, goldsmith.
smitte, *swf.* smithy, 24.
snē (-wes), *sm.* snow, 17, 36, 42.
snēl (-lles), *aj.* quick, eager, alert; blithe.
snēlheit, *sf.* haste, quickness.
snīden, *sv.* I, cut, injure, wound, 11, 12, 17, 30, 76.
snit, *sm.* cut, slice, 44.
snuor (*pl.* **snüere**), *sf.* string.
sō, **so**, *av.* and *conj.* as, so, if, whereas, on the other hand, thus, as it was, 69.
solch, **sölch** (**solich**), *pr.* such, of such a nature, 71.
soldenære, *sm.* hired soldier, mercenary.
solt (-des), *sm.* pay.
Soltāne, *pn.*
soltu = **solt dū**.
son = **so ne**.
sorge, *swf.* care, grief, sorrow.
sorgelōs, *aj.* free from cares.
sorgen, *vv.* be anxious, fear, dread.
spāhe, *av.* elegantly, neatly.
spalten, *sv.* VII, split, 87.
spān, *sm.* chip, shaving; notched stick, tally; degree of relationship.
spanen, *sv.* VI, entice, 85.
spange, *swf.* clasp, buckle.
spannen, *sv.* VII, span, 87.
sparn, *vv.* spare, forbear.
spēhen, *vv.* look at, observe.
spēr, *sn.* spear, lance.
spiegel, *sm.* mirror, looking-glass; model, pattern.
spiegelglas, *sn.* lovely image, picture.
spil, *sn.* game, play; joke, fun; pleasure, delight.
spīln (*pres. part.* **spilende**, **spilede**), *vv.* play; glitter, glisten, 90.

- spinnen**, *sv.* III, spin, 81.
spise, *sf.* food.
spiwen, *sv.* I, vomit, 17, 77.
spore, *spor*, *wm.* spur.
spot, *sm.* scoff, scorn, mockery; joke, fun; **āne spot**, sincerely, candidly.
spotten, *vv.* (with *gen.*), mock, scoff at, scorn.
sprēchen, *sv.* IV, speak, say, talk 9. 4 note, 19, 23. 1, 82.
spreiten, *vv.* spread.
springen, *sv.* III, spring, leap.
stæte, *sf.* duration, continuance, constancy, steadfastness.
stæte, *aj.* constant, firm, steadfast; *av.* **stæteclīchen**.
stætekeit, **stætikeit**, *sf.* firmness, constancy.
stahel, *sm.* steel.
stam (-mmes), *sm.* stem; prop, model.
stān, **stēn**, *sv.* VI, stand; befit, become, suit, 11, 86, 96.
stap (-bes), *sm.* stick, staff.
starc, *aj.* strong, heavy, hard, severe; *av.* **starke**.
stat, *sf.* abode, place, spot; opportunity.
state, *sf.* suitable or comfortable place; opportunity; **ze staten komen**, help.
stēchen, *sv.* IV, prick, 9. 4 note, 82.
stēgreif, *sm.* stirrup.
stein, *sm.* stone, precious stone, grindstone, millstone, 3, 17.
stēln, *sv.* IV, steal, 9. 1, 11, 74 note, 82.
stellen, *vv.* place, 90.
stērbēn, *sv.* III, die, 10 note 1, 81; *sn.* dying, death.
sterke, *sf.* strength, bravery.
stērne, *wm.* star.
stīc (-ges), *sm.* path, way.
stich, *sm.* stab, thrust.
stīgen, *sv.* I, rise, mount.
stille, *aj.* still, quiet, secret.
stimme, *sf.* voice.
stinken (*pret.* **stanc**), *sv.* III, stink, exhale a disagreeable odour.
stiure, *sf.* gift, tax.
støren, *vv.* hinder, overthrow, destroy.
stōle, *sf.* stole, surplice.
stolz, *aj.* stately.
stoup (-bes), *sm.* dust.
stōzen, *sv.* VII, push, shove, thrust, 5, 11, 87.
strāfen, *vv.* blame, set right.
strāze, *swf.* way, road.
strēben, *sv.* V, exert oneself, strive.
strengē, *aj.* strict, unfriendly.
strīchen, *sv.* I, strike, stroke, rub.
strīt, *sm.* strife, quarrel, fight.
strīteclīchen, *av.* eagerly, zealously.
strīten, *sv.* I, quarrel, fight, strive, 76.
strō (-wes), *sn.* straw; blade, stalk, 36, 46.
strouwen, **strōuwen**, *vv.* strew, 10, 36.
stücke, *sn.* piece.
stum, *aj.* dumb, 32. 1.
stunde, *sf.* hour, time.
stunt, *indecl. fem.* time.
stuol, *sm.* seat of a judge, papal power; throne.
sturm, *sm.* fight, battle.
sū, *sf.* sow, pig, 49.
sūeze, *aj.* sweet, lovely, 60.
sūeze, *sf.* loveliness, alluring enticement.
sūezen, *vv.* sweeten, 90.
sūfen, *sv.* II, gulp down liquids, 80.
sūft, *sm.* sigh, groan.
sūgen, *sv.* II, suck, 80.
suln, **sūln**, *pret.-pres.* (*pres.* **sol**,

pret. **solte**, should, ought), shall, 40, 93.
sum, *pr.* any one at all; *pl.* some, 71.
sumelich, *pr.* many a, whoever; *pl.* some, 71.
sūmen, *vv.* tarry, 10.
sumer, *sm.* summer, 42.
sumerlich, *aj.* summerlike.
sumerzīt, *sf.* summer time.
sun, *sm.* son, 5, 9, 4, 10, 19, 44.
sünde, *sf.* sin.
sunder, *prep.* without, against;
sunder spot, seriously, in earnest; *av.* *sunderliche(n)*, especially, separately.
sunne, *wmf.* sun.
suochen, *vv.* seek, 90.
suone, *sf.* atonement.
suon(e)tac (-ges), *sm.* day of judgement.
suoze, *av.* sweetly, 60.
sus (sust), *av.* so, thus, in such a way.
swā, *swar*, *av.* wherever, 69.
swach(e), *aj.* worthless, bad.
swacheit, *sf.* dishonour, disgrace.
swachen, *vv.* weaken.
swachlich, *aj.* weak.
swære, *aj.* painful, sad, unpleasant, burdensome; weighty, heavy, 60; *daz swære*, such a weight.
swære, *sf.* burden, trouble, grief, sadness.
swanc (-ges, -kes), *sm.* swinging movement, hurling, throwing.
swannen, *swanne*, *av.* and *conj.* whenever, 69.
swar, see *swā*.
swār (swære), *aj.* heavy, 55; *av.* *swære*, 60.
swarz, *aj.* black.
swēben, *vv.* hover, move to and fro.
swēder, *pr.* who of two, 69.

swēher, *sm.* father-in-law, 30.
sweifen, *sv.* VII, rove, 87.
swelch (swel), *pr.* each who, whoever, what sort, whatever, 69, 71.
swellen, *sv.* III, swell, 81.
swenne (see *swannen*), *conj.* whenever, if, whilst, 69.
swēr, *pr.* who, whoever, who-soever; *neut.* *swaz*, 69, 70, 71.
swern (swerigen, swerjen), *sv.* VI, swear, 35, 86.
swért, *sn.* sword.
swértslac (pl. -slege), *sm.* sword-cut.
swester, swēster, *sf.* sister, 11, 48.
swie, *av.* and *conj.*, as, how, however, howsoever; though, 69.
swīgen, *sv.* I, be silent, keep silent, 76.
swiger, *sf.* mother-in-law, 30.
swimmen, *sv.* III, swim, 31, 81.
swinde, *aj.* powerful, strong, angry; *av.* quickly.
swinden, *sv.* III, vanish, disappear.
swingen, *sv.* III, swing.

T

tac (-ges), *sm.* day, 5, 11, 33, 42; *av.* *tages*, by day.
tägelich, *aj.* daily, 5, 10.
tagen, *vv.* become day, dawn.
tagezīt, *sf.* space of a day.
tal (pl. teler), *sn.* dale, 47.
tanz, *sm.* dance.
tanzen, *vv.* dance.
tanzwīse, *sf.* a song which is sung to the accompaniment of dancing.
teil, *smn.* portion; *ein teil*, something, a little.
teilen, *vv.* divide, distribute.
tief, *aj.* deep, 15, 19.

- tier, *sn.* animal.
 tisch, *sm.* table.
 tiure, tiuwer, *aj.* and *av.* dear, precious; noble, excellent, 9. 3, 57.
 tiuren, tiuwarn, *ww.* esteem highly, honour, confer honour.
 tiutsch, tiusch, *aj.* German; tiuschiu zunge, German language, Germany.
 tiuvel, *sm.* devil.
 tærisch, tærsch, *aj.* foolish, silly.
 tætlích, *aj.* deadly.
 tohter, *sf.* daughter, 10, 25, 49.
 töhterlín, *sn.* little daughter, 10.
 tor, *sn.* gate, door.
 tóre, tór, *wm.* fool.
 törperheit, *sf.* impoliteness, vulgarity.
 tót, *aj.* dead, 3, 25, 30.
 tót (-des), *sm.* death, 5, 11, 30, 33; in dēm tōde swēben, be on the peril of losing one's life.
 tou (-wes), *sn.* dew, 46.
 toufen, *ww.* baptize, 10.
 tougen, *sf.* secret, wonder; *aj.* dark, secret; *av.* secretly, 55.
 tougenlích, *aj.* secret; *av.* tougenliche.
 träge, *aj.* slow, weary, lazy; *av.* träge.
 tragen, *sv.* VI, bear, carry; wear; have, 85.
 trahen (*pl.* trehene), *sm.* drop, tear.
 trahten, *ww.* think, strive, 92.
 trēffen, *sv.* IV, hit, 32, 82.
 treit = traget.
 trēten, *sv.* V, tread, step, enter, 83; trēten hinder sich, step back.
 tretten, *ww.* tread, 31. 3.
 trīben, *sv.* I, drive; play, carry on, 76.
 triefen, *sv.* II, drop, drip, 31. 1, 78.
 triegen, *sv.* II, deceive, plot, intrigue.
 trinken, *sv.* III, drink, 19, 81.
 triuten, *ww.* caress, like, love; greet.
 triuwe, *aj.* true, 16 note; *sf.* fidelity, faithfulness; mit triuwen (triwen), faithfully.
 triuwen, trūwen, *ww.* believe, trust, hope, 16 note.
 trāstelín, *sn.* consolation, hope.
 trāsten, *ww.* console, comfort; help.
 tropfe, *wm.* drop, 31. 3.
 trōst, *sm.* consolation, hope.
 troum, *sm.* dream.
 troumen, *ww.* dream, 10.
 trüebe, *aj.* gloomy.
 trüebсал, *sn.* gloom, 8.
 trūrec, *aj.* sad; *av.* trūreclíche.
 trūren, *ww.* mourn, be sad, downcast; also *sn.*
 trūt, *aj.* dear, beloved.
 trūtgemahēle, *sf.* bride.
 tügen, tügen, *pret.-pres.* (*pres.* touc, *pret.* tohte), be fit for, good for, of use, 93.
 tugenhaft, *aj.* fit, hearty, noble.
 tugent, tugende, *sf.* virtue, good qualities, strength, power, valour, 49.
 tugentlíchēn, *av.* with noble demeanour.
 tump (-bes), *aj.* inexperienced, silly, young.
 tumpheit, *sf.* folly, foolish action; inexperience; tumpheit walten, show or have great inexperience.
 tunkel, *aj.* dark.
 tuon, *anom. v.* do, make, form, shape; cause, 94; tuon en-

blecken, cause to become visible; **ze leide tuon**, cause grief, pain, or injury to; **wër hât dir getân?** who has done anything to you?; **als ein got getân**, like a god.

tür, *sf.* door.

Turkentâls, *pn.* one of Parzival's princes.

turren, türren, *pret.-pres. (pres. tar, pret. torste)*, dare, venture, 10, 93.

tûsenste, *num.* thousandth, 62.

tûsent, *num.* thousand, 5, 62, 64.

twahen (*pret. twuoc*), *sv.* VI, wash, 85.

twërch (*gen. twërhes*), askew, 34.

twingen, *sv.* III, compel, force, subdue, overcome; **sich twingen lāzen**, let oneself be compelled.

U

übel, *aj.* evil, bad, 55, 58, 60; *av.* übele.

über, *prep.* over, because of, for.

übergröz, *aj.* very great.

übergülde, *sn.* gilding, raising of value.

übergulde, *sf.* that which surpasses something else in value.

übermæzlichen, *av.* beyond measure.

übermüete, *sf.* insolence, haughtiness.

übermuot, *sm.* haughtiness, insolence.

übern = **über dën**, 68 note 2.

übersēhen, *sv.* V, overlook, not observe.

überstrīten, *sv.* I, gain the victory over, conquer.

übertragen, *sv.* VI, spare, discharge something.

überwinden, *sv.* III, overcome, get over.

ûf, ûfe, *prep.* and *av.* up, up to, on, to, upwards, 23. 1; **ûf genāde**, in firm confidence; **ûf die triwe mîn**, upon my faith or troth; **ûf sliezen**, open.

ûfem, ûfme = **ûf dēm**, 68 note 2.

ûfen = **ûf dën**, 68 note 2.

Uterlec, *pn.*

umbe, ümbe, umb, um, *prep.* and *av.* about, around, upon, for, 10 note 2; **dar umbe**, therefore; **umbe sust**, for nothing; **um waz**, why, for what reason; **umbe daz**, on account of that, for that, therefore; **umbe gān**, turn or go round.

umbesliezen, *sv.* II, embrace, — surround.

umbevāhen, *sv.* VII, embrace.

unbewollen, *part. aj.* unspotted.

und, unde, unt, *cj.* and *av.* and; again, on the other hand, 9. 6, 69.

unden, *av.* below, beneath.

under (undr), *prep.* under, beneath, between, among; **under in**, among themselves; **under wēgen lān**, omit; **under stunden**, at times, now and then, sometimes; **under wīlen**, from time to time, at times, sometimes.

underlāz, *sm.* interruption.

underscheiden, *sv.* VII, relate; explain fully.

undersnīden, *sv.* I, interrupt, intermingle.

understān, *sv.* VI, step in between, hinder.

undertænic, *aj.* humble, subject, submissive.

undertān, *part. aj.* humble, submissive.

underwinden, *sv. III, refl.* undertake.

unfuoge (also used as a proper noun), *sf.* unseemliness, indecorum, misconduct; coarseness.

unfuore, *wf.* badness, roughness; wicked mode of life.

ungebære, *sf.* despairing lamentation.

ungebant, *aj.* unbeaten, untrodden.

ungebatten, *aj.* useless, worthless.

ungeborn, *part. aj.* unborn.

ungeburt, *sf.* low birth.

ungefüege, *aj.* very great, powerful; bad, unbecoming, coarse, uncouth, rude; *av.* ungefuoge.

ungehabe, *sf.* sorrow, grief.

ungeliche, *av.* immeasurably, incomparably.

ungelōnet, *aj.* unrewarded.

ungelouplich, *aj.* incredible.

ungelücke, *sn.* misfortune.

ungemach, *sn.* misfortune, discomfort, sorrow.

ungemüete, *snf.* mourning, grief, sorrow.

ungenāde, *sf.* disfavour, hatred, harm.

ungenæme, *aj.* unpleasant.

ungenesen, *aj.* unhealed, uncured.

ungeriht, *sn.* fault, crime.

ungerne, *av.* unwillingly.

ungesammet, *aj.* not united, not unanimous.

ungeschriben, *part. aj.* that which cannot be written.

ungestaltheit, *sf.* deformity.

ungesunt, (-des), *sm.* sickness, illness.

unhövesch, *aj.* uncourtly, coarse, low, vulgar.

unkraft, *sf.* fainting fit, swoon.
unkunt (**unkuntlich**), *aj.* unknown.

unlange, *av.* in a short time.

unmære, *aj.* not worth mentioning, little observed, worthless, disgusting; undervalued.

unmæzlich, *aj.* immoderate, excessive.

unmāzen, *av.* immeasurably.

unminnen, *wv.* treat in an unloving manner.

unmüezekeit, *sf.* work, trouble.

unmügelich, *aj.* impossible.

unmuoze, *sf.* occupation, restlessness.

unnāch, *av.* by no means.

unnōt, *sf.* without danger or need.

unrewert = **unerwert**, *part. aj.* unprohibited.

unriuweliche, *av.* without trouble or care.

unsælekeit, *sf.* unhappiness; misfortune.

unsælic (-ec), *aj.* unhappy, cursed.

unschulde, *sf.* innocence.

unschuldigen, *wv.* proclaim one's innocence.

unsegelich, *aj.* unspeakable.

unsenfte, *aj.* painful, hard.

unser, *pr.* our, 7, 67.

unstæte, *aj.* inconstant, fickle.

unstæte, *sf.* inconstancy, fickleness.

untriuwe, *sf.* faithlessness, deceit.

untræsten, *wv.* dishearten, discourage.

untrōst, *sm.* despondency, discouragement.

untugent, *sf.* lack of good training.

unversunnen, *pp.* unconscious.

unvrō, **unfrō**, *aj.* unhappy, sad, mournful.

unwandelbære, *aj.* steadfast, unchangeable.

unwendic (-ec), *aj.* unchangeable.

unwért, *sm.* unworthiness, contempt for, scorn.

unwīp, (-bes), *sn.* bad woman; unwomanly creature; unworthy the name of Weib.

unwīse, *sf.* false tone or sound; bad style.

unze, *unz*, *prep.* and *conj.* till, until, up to, down to, to; *unz* her, hitherto; *unz enmitten an*, right down to.

unzerworht, *aj.* undivided, undissected, not cut up.

Uote, *pn.* 54.

ūppic, *aj.* unnecessary, superfluous; proud.

ūz, *prep.* and *av.* out, out of, of, from; **ūzen**, *av.*; **ūzerwelt**, select, chosen.

ūzer, *prep.* out of, from.

ūzreise, *sf.* marching, going out or off; departure; song sung by knights on the march.

V (F)

vadem, *sm.* thread, 9. 2, 42.

vāhen, **fāhen** (**vān**), *sv.* VII, catch, seize, take, 29, 30, 38, 87.

val (-wes), *aj.* yellow, 36.

vallen, *sv.* VII, fall, fall down, fall to one's lot, 32. 4, 87.

valsch, *aj.* false, deceitful.

valsch, *sm.* fault, spot, impurity, deceit; **valsches laz**, free from deceit or falseness.

valten, *sv.* VII, fold, 87.

vancnüsse, *sf.* captivity, 8.

var, **vare** (-wes), *aj.* coloured; formed, looking.

vāren, *vv.* place behind, watch, lie in wait.

varn, *sv.* VI, go, fare, betake oneself, 5, 10, 74 note, 85; **varndez guot**, movable property.

vart, *sf.* way, march, journey. **varwe**, *sf.* colour, form, appearance.

vaste, *av.* fast, quickly, strongly; firmly; very.

vater, *sm.* (*pl.* **veter**, **väter**), father, II, 19, 45.

väterlich, *aj.* fatherly, 10.

väterlīn, *dim.* of **vater**, 5, 10.

vazzen, *vv.* seize, take, gather.

vēhten, *sv.* IV, fight, 82.

veile, *aj.* cheap, purchasable.

vēl (-lles), *sn.* hide, skin, 32. 1.

vellen, *vv.* fell, kill, 90.

vels, *swm.* rock, II.

velschen, *vv.* falsify; make faithless.

vēlt (-des), *sn.* field.

venster, *sn.* window, 46.

verbērgen, *sv.* III, hide, conceal.

verbērn, *sv.* IV, spare, abstain from, forbear, avoid, keep from, give up.

verbieten, *sv.* II, forbid, hinder, prevent, obstruct; ward off.

verdagen, *vv.* keep secret, conceal.

verdērbēn, perish, spoil, destroy, 81.

verdērbnisse, *sfm.*, destruction, 8.

verdienen, *vv.* deserve, earn.

verdriezen (*impers. c. gen.*), *sv.* III, grieve, fret, vex.

verdringen, *sv.* III, crowd out, suppress, displace, push on one side.

vereinen, *vv. refl.* unite.

verenden, *vv.* end.

vergēben, *sv.* V, poison, infect.

- vergēlten**, *sv.* III, repay, requite.
vergēzzzen, *sv.* V, forget, 83.
vergiezen, *sv.* II, pour over, sprinkle with water.
verhēln, *sv.* IV, conceal.
verhouwen (*pret.* -hiu and -hie, also weak -houte), *sv.* VII, hew in pieces, cut asunder.
verjēhen, *sv.* V, say, tell, relate; give to understand, assure.
verkēren, *ww.* change, turn round; destroy.
verkiesen, *sv.* II, give up, forgo, forget.
verklagen, *ww.* cease to mourn, bear with patience.
verkreken, *ww.* destroy.
verlāzen (*verlān*), *sv.* VII, leave off, forsake.
verleiten, *ww.* lead astray.
verleschen, *sv.* IV, become extinguished, extinguish.
verliesen (*vliesen*), *sv.* II, lose, 78.
verligen, *sv.* V, miss through sleeping too long, oversleep.
verlust, *sm.* loss.
vermīden, (*pp.* *vermiten*), *sv.* I, avoid, omit, not to take place, keep aloof from.
vermischen, *ww.* mix, mingle.
vernēmen, *sv.* IV, perceive, observe, get to know.
vērre, *aj.* and *av.* far, far away, distant, 31.
verrihten, *ww.* settle, pass sentence upon.
versagen, *ww.* refuse, deny.
verschaffen, *sv.* VI, do *or* act in a bad manner, spoil, destroy.
verschulden, *ww.* pay back.
versēhen, *sv.* V, observe, recognize; *refl.* hope, dread.
versinnen (*sich*), *sv.* III, arrive at years of discretion; *c. gen.* become conscious of.
versmāhelich, *aj.* disgraceful, ignominious.
versmāhen, *ww.* despise, mock.
versperren (*pret.* *versparte*), *ww.* shut, close.
versprēchen, *sv.* IV, decline, spurn.
verstān (-stēn), *sv.* VI, perceive, understand.
verstōzen, *sv.* VII, drive away.
versūmen, *ww.* neglect, let slip, spoil.
versuochen, *ww.* try, test.
verswern, *sv.* VI, abjure, deny by an oath.
verswīgen, *sv.* I, forbear talking.
verswinden, *sv.* III, disappear, flee.
vertragen, *sv.* VI, endure, bear.
vertrīben, *sv.* I, drive away, make to pass.
vervāhen, *verfāhen*, *sv.* VII, reach, bring to pass; *mich* *vervāhet*, it is of use *or* advantage to me.
vervluochen, -*fluochen*, *ww.* curse.
verwāzen, *sv.* VII, ruin; imprecate, curse.
verwēgen, *sv.* V, resolve.
verweinen, *ww.* exhaust, by weeping.
verwunden, *ww.* wound.
verwürken (*pret.* -*worhte*), *ww.* lose, forfeit, commit.
verzagen, *ww.* lose courage, withdraw, despair, despond.
verzern, *ww.* consume; destroy.
veste, *sf.* firmness, constancy.
vīant, *vīent*, *vīnt*, *sm.* enemy, fiend, 8. 42.

vier, *num.* four, 62.
vier, *fier*, *aj.* proud, stately, majestic, beautiful; *av.* **viere**.
vierde, *num.* fourth, 62.
vierzēhen, *num.* fourteen, 62.
vierzēhende, *num.* fourteenth, 62.
vierzic (-ec), *num.* forty, 62.
vierzigeste, *num.* fortieth.
vihe, *sn.* cattle, 46.
vil, *aj.* much, many; *av.* very; *indecl. sb. c. gen.* much, many;
vil wēnic ganz *c. gen.* not at all complete or whole.
vinden, **finden**, *sv.* III, find, 9. 4 note, 81.
vinger, *sm.* finger.
vingerlīn, **vingerīn**, *sn.* ring, 8.
vingerlinc, *sm.* ring.
vinster, *sf.* darkness, 48.
vinster, *aj.* dark, gloomy, 55.
vinsternisse, *sf.* darkness, 8.
vint = **vindet**, 74 note.
vīnt, see **vīant**.
vīol, *sm.* violet.
virren, *ww.* keep away from.
visch, *sm.* fish, 11, 19.
viur, **fiuwer**, *sn.* fire; lighting.
vlēhen, **flēhen** (**vlēn**), *ww.* beseech, implore, 38.
vlēhten, *sv.* IV, plait, 82.
fleisch, *sn.* flesh.
vliegen, **fliegen**, *sv.* II, fly, 10 note 3, 25, 78.
vliehen, **fliehen**, *sv.* II, flee, 18, 19, 78.
vliessen = **verliessen**.
vliegen, **fliegen**, *sv.* II, flow, swim; ruin, destroy, 10 note 3, 78.
vliz, **fliz**, *sm.* assiduity, zeal, eagerness, care; *ze flīze*, diligently, carefully.
vlizec, *aj.* diligent, 60. 3.
vlizecliche(n), *av.* diligently, 60. 3.
vluht, *sf.* refuge.

flühtesal, *sf.* flight, escape; security.
vluoch (*pl.* **vlüeche**), *sm.* curse.
vogel, *sm.* bird, 9. 2, 42.
vögelīn, **vogel(l)īn**, *sn.* little bird, 8.
vogelsanc, *sm.* song of birds.
vol (-les), *aj.* full, 15, 31.
volc, *sn.* folk, people.
volenden, *ww.* bring to an end.
volgen, *ww.* follow, accompany.
volgesagen, *ww.* tell fully.
volle, *wm.* abundance, completeness.
vollebringen (*pret.* **-brāhte**), *ww.* perfect, carry out.
volleclichen, *av.* fully, entirely.
volleist, *sm.* assistance, succour.
von, *prep.* from, away from, with, about, through, by;
von schulden, rightly, properly.
vonme, **vomme** = **von dēme**.
vor, *prep.* before, for.
vorbilde, *sn.* pattern, model.
vorder, *aj.* former, front, 59.
vordern, *av.* further, 90.
vorderste, *aj.* foremost, 59.
vorht, *sf.* fear, dread.
vrāge, *sf.* question.
vrāgen, *ww.* ask, 9. 2, 92.
frāvele, *aj.* bold, 10.
frēch, *aj.* courageous, daring, bold, brave; saucy, impudent.
freischen, *sv.* VII, come to know, learn, be told.
vreise, **freise**, *swf.* horror, what is dreadful or horrible.
vremde, **fremde** (**vrōmde**), *aj.* strange, wonderful; unknown.
vremen, *ww.* perform, 31. 3.
vreude, **vrōude**, **frōide**, **freude**, **frōude**, *swf.* joy, gladness;

- fröuden (*gen. pl.*) lam, bereft of joys, pleasures.
 vreudelōs, *aj.* joyless.
 freuderīche, *aj.* rich in joy, very gratifying.
 vreuwen, vrewen, vreun, freuwen, frewen, freun, *ww.* cause to rejoice, rejoice, gladden, give pleasure to, be glad. See vrōuwen.
 vrevēl, *sf.* audacity, insolence.
 frevellichen, *av.* insolently, boldly, with impudence.
 vrēzzen, *sv.* V, devour, 83.
 vrī, *aj.* free, unrestrained, unmarried.
 vride, fride, *sm.* peace, truce; protection, safety, 3, 19, 43.
 vrid(e)lich, *aj.* peaceful.
 vrīe, *sf.* freedom.
 vrīe, *wm.* freeman.
 frien, frijen, frigen, *ww.* free, 35.
 vriesen, *sv.* II, freeze, 78.
 vrisch, frisch, *aj.* fresh, new.
 vrist, *sf.* time.
 vristen, *ww.* keep alive, protect, rescue.
 vriundinne, *sf.* female friend, 8, 48.
 vriunt, friunt, *sm.* friend, 42.
 vrō, frō, *aj.* and *av.* glad, joyful.
 vrōlich, *aj.* joyful; *av.* vrōlichen.
 vrōmde = vremde.
 — vrōmede, *sf.* absence.
 frosch, *sm.* frog.
 vrōuen, vrōuwen, frōwen, *ww.* gladden, give pleasure to; be glad, 10. See vreuwen.
 vrouwe, frouwe, frowe (*vrou*, *frou*, *frō*, before proper names), *wf.* lady, madam, 9, 6, 10; *ze* frowen, as wife.
 vrōuwelīn, frouwelīn, *sn.* little girl, maid, miss.
 vruht, *sf.* fruit.
 vrum, *aj.* brave, active, excellent, useful.
 vrumen, frumen, *ww.* benefit, be of use or advantage.
 vruo, *av.* early.
 vüegen, füegen, *ww.* procure, bring to pass; grant.
 vüeren, füeren (*pret.* fuorte), *ww.* lead, carry, remove.
 fuhs, *sm.* fox, 19.
 vūl, *aj.* bad, rotten.
 vülle, *sf.* fulness, 15.
 füllen, *ww.* fill, 90.
 funden, *pp.* of finden.
 vūnf, funf, finf, *num.* five, 19, 62.
 fünfte, finfte, *num.* fifth, 62.
 vuoge, *sf.* becomingness, decency.
 fuore, *sf.* manner of life; way of acting.
 vuoz, fuoz (*pl.* vüeze), *sm.* foot, 10, 44.
 vür, für, *prep.* and *av.* for, before, over, against; für guot haben, be content with, put up with; für iuch, past you; für sie, past them; für tōren kleit, as fool's clothing; vür wār, in truth, truly.
 vürbaz, fürbaz, *av.* further.
 vürhten, fürhten (*pret.* vorhte), *ww.* fear, dread, 15, 90.
 vürnames, *av.* in the full sense of the word.
 vürste, fürste, *wm.* prince; ein dīn fürste, one of thy princes.
 vurt, furt (*pl.* fürte), *sm.* ford, bed of a river.

W

- wā, *av.* where, whither, 39.
 wāc (-ges), *sn.* moving water, flood.
 wacker, *aj.* watchful, 31. 2.
 wæjen (wæn), *ww.* blow, 90.

- wænen** (*pret.* wānde), *ww.* think, fancy, 90.
wærlīchen, *av.* in truth, truly.
wætlich, *aj.* beautiful.
wætliche, *sf.* beauty.
wāfen, *sn.* weapon, sword.
wāfenen, **wāpenen**, *ww.* arm, equip, array. See **wāpen**.
wage, *wf.* cradle.
wāge, *sf.* balance, scale.
wagen, *sm.* wagon, 49.
wahsen, *sv.* VI, grow, 10, 85.
wal, *sf.* choice, 48.
walden, *sv.* VII, have power over. See **walten**.
Wāleis, *pn.* Valois in France, inhabitant of Valois.
wallen (*pret.* wiel), *sv.* VII, boil, bubble, 87.
walt (-des), *sm.* wood, forest.
walten (with *gen.*), *sv.* VII, have power.
wan, *aj.* empty, bereft of.
wan, *av.* besides, but only;
niht wan, only, nothing but;
wan daz, only that, if—not;
wan unz, whilst, as long as;
wan dēm einen, except for the one.
wan (wande, want), *conj.* for, if, because, then, 9. 6.
wān, *sm.* faith, hope, mood.
wanc (-kes), *sm.* inconstancy, disloyalty, unfaithfulness, changeableness.
wandel, *smn.* change, fickleness; fault, defect, failing.
wandeln, *ww.* wander, 9. 2, 90.
wange, *wn.* cheek, 50.
wāngelīn, *sn.* little cheek.
want, *sf.* wall.
wāpen (with *sich*), *ww.* arm oneself. See **wāfenen**.
wāpen, *sn.* weapon, 46.
wāpenen, see **wāfenen**.
wāpenroc, *sm.* upper-garment drawn over the coat of mail.
war, *av.* where, whither; **war umbe**, wherefore, why; **war zuo**, for what purpose.
war, *sf.* attention, observation; **war nēmen**, give attention.
wār, *sn.* truth; right; **wār haben**, be right.
wār, *aj.* true, right, real.
wārheit, *sf.* truth.
wārinne, *av.* wherein, 39.
wärmen, *ww.* to warm, 5, 10.
warnen, *ww.* equip, prepare.
warten (*pret.* warte), *ww.* wait; look, view, 9. 2.
was, **wasse**, *aj.* sharp, 55.
waschen (weschen), *sv.* VI, wash, 85.
waste, *sf.* desert.
wāt, *sf.* clothing, dress.
waten, *sv.* VI, wade, 85.
waz, *pr.* what, 19, 23. 1, 70;
av. why, wherefore.
wē (*gen.* wēwes), *sn.* woe, pain;
wē tuon, hurt, 17, 46; *interj.*
wehe, **wē**, woe! alas!; **mīr ist wē**, I am sad.
wēben, *sv.* V, weave, 28, 83.
wēc (-ges), *sm.* way; homeward journey, 5, 11.
wecken (*pret.* wacte, wahte), *ww.* awake.
wēder, *pr.* who of two, which of two, 70, 71; **wēder—noch**, neither—nor.
wegen, *ww.* move, swing.
wēgen, *sv.* V, weigh, poise; put in motion, 83.
wēhsal (-el), *smn.* change, 8.
weich, *aj.* weak.
weideganc (-ges), *sm.* hunting way or path.
weinen (*pres. part.* weinde for weinende), *ww.* weep, bewail; also *sn.*
weise, *wm.* orphan; precious stone in the royal crown.
weizgot, *interj.* verily.

- welich, welch**, *pr.* which, what kind of, 11, 70, 71.
- wellen** (*pres. sing.* wil, *pret.* wolte), *anom. v.* will, wish, 98; **got dës niht enwelle**, may God forbid it.
- weln, welen, wellen**, *ww.* choose, 90.
- wenden** (*pp.* gewant), *ww.* with *gen.* turn, prevent, hinder, turn away, 32. 3.
- wënic**, *aj.* little, small; *indecl. sb. c. gen.* little.
- wenke**, *sf.* turning, turn, change.
- wenken**, *ww.* totter, stagger, waver.
- wer**, *sf.* defence; protection; battle.
- wër**, *neut. waz*, *pr.* who, what; **wës**, *av.* wherefore, 9. 6, 70.
- wërben**, *sv.* III, turn, go to and fro, strive, work, be active, 33.
- wërde**, *aj.* worthy, noble.
- wërdekeit, wërdikeit**, *sf.* worthiness, respect, honour, excellence.
- wërden**, *sv.* III, become, be, be born, 9. 4 note, 38, 81; **wërden wol innen**, perceive clearly; **wërden buoz** with *dat.* of pers. and *gen.* of thing: **dëm wirt kumbers buoz**, he has compensation for his grief; **wërden rāt** *c. gen.* be a remedy.
- wërdiclichen**, *av.* worthily.
- wërffen**, *sv.* III, throw, set in quick motion, 10 note, 23. 2, 81.
- wërlt, wërelt, wëlt**, *sf.* world, people; **dër wërelde riuwe**, great sadness or grief, lit. sadness of the world.
- wërltlich**, *aj.* worldly, earthly.
- wërlttöre**, *wm.* one befooled by the world.
- wërltzage**, *wm.* arrant coward.
- wern** (*weren*), *ww.* check, ward off from, restrain, hinder, 90; *c. gen.* and *sich*, protect or defend oneself against.
- wern**, *ww.* last, hold out, continue.
- wërren** (with *dat.*), *sv.* III, perplex, confuse, trouble, disturb, be a hindrance, 81.
- wërt** (-des), *aj.* worthy, noble; *snm.* respect, good fortune; *av.* wërde.
- wës** (*gen.* of waz), *av.* why, wherefore.
- wësen**, *sv.* V, be, 19, 83; **wësen gäch** *c. gen.* of person: hasten, exert oneself, eagerly.
- wëter**, *sn.* weather, 46.
- wetzen**, *ww.* whet, sharpen.
- wider** (*widere*), *sm.* wether, 9. 2.
- wider**, *prep.* against, to; *av.* again, back.
- widersagen**, *ww.* renounce; proclaim war; contradict.
- widerstān**, *sv.* VI, resist, withstand, be opposed to.
- widervarn**, *sv.* VI, fall to the lot of.
- widerzæme**, *aj.* revolting, hateful, disgusting.
- wie**, *av.* and *conj.* how, as, that.
- wīgant** (-des), *sm.* warrior, 8.
- wihen**, *ww.* consecrate, bless.
- wilde**, *aj.* untamed, wild, 55.
- wīle, wīl**, *sf.* time, while; **die wīle**, meanwhile, in the meantime.
- wīlen(t)**, *av.* formerly, once upon a time.
- wille**, *wm.* will, wish, desire.

willeclīch, *aj.* willing, wishing;
av. willeclīchen.

willekomen, *aj.* and *av.* welcome.

wilt (-des), *sn.* wild animals, game.

win, *sm.* wine, 3, 19.

winden, *sv.* III, wind, bind up, 81.

—**wine**, *sm.* friend.

wint (-des), *sm.* wind, 14. 1.

winter, *sm.* winter.

wīp (-bes), *sn.* woman, wife, 5, 11.

wīpheit, *sf.* womanliness.

wīplich, *aj.* womanly.

wirde, *sf.* worthiness, dignity, honour, honourableness.

wirden, *ww.* make valuable.

wirs, *av.* worse, 61.

wirser, *aj.* worse, 58.

wirsest, **wir(se)ste**, *aj.* and *av.* worst, 9. 5, 58, 60, 61.

wirt, *sm.* head of a house, landlord; **dēr helle wirt**, devil.

wirtinne, *sf.* mistress, hostess, 8.

wise, **wīs**, *aj.* wise, sensible, experienced, 28.

wīse, **wīs**, *sf.* manner, melody, song.

wisen, *ww.* guide, direct.

wīsheit, *sf.* wisdom.

wīslīch, *aj.* wisely, 8; *av.* wīslīchen.

wīt, *aj.* far, wide.

witze, *sf.* understanding, sense; reflection.

wīz, *aj.* white.

wīzen (with *dat.*), *sv.* I, reproach, blame.

wīzzēn, *pret.-pres.* (*pres.* **weiz**, *pret.* **weste**, **wiste**, **wesse**, **wisse**), know, 5, 11, 28, 92.

wol, **wole**, *av.* well, 5, 9. 1, 61;

wolgezogen, well-mannered;

wolgetān, beautiful; **wol im**,

happy or lucky is he!; **wol dir**, hail to thee; **wol mich**, happy am I!; **wol tuon c. dat.** do good, please; **wol ir dēs**, good luck to her for that!

wolf, *sm.* wolf, 15.

wolken, *sn.* cloud.

wolle, *wf.* wool, 15.

wollust, *smf.* joy, bliss, happiness.

wonen, *ww.* dwell, live, 9. 4; **mir wont bī**, I possess.

wort, *sn.* word, speech, 46.

wüllin, **wullin**, *aj.* woollen, 15.

wūlpinne, *sf.* she-wolf, 15.

wunde, *wf.* wound.

wunder, *sn.* wonder, marvel; a great amount or number, abundance; **bluomen wunder**, a great quantity of flowers.

wunderalt, *aj.* very old.

wundern, *ww.* wonder, wonder at, admire, 9. 2.

wünne, **wunne**, *sf.* joy, pleasure, 10 note 2.

wünneclīch, **wunneclīch**, *aj.* joyful, delightful, beautiful, pleasant; *av.* **wünneclīche(n)**.

wunsch, *sm.* wish, ideal, perfection, highest perfection.

wünschen (with *gen.*), *ww.* wish, desire, 90.

wunschlēben, *sn.* such a life as one could wish for.

wunt (-des), *aj.* wounded.

wuof, *sm.* cry of woe.

wuofen, *sv.* VII, bewail, 87.

würgen, *ww.* take by the throat, choke, throttle.

würken, **wurken** (*pret.* **worhte**), *ww.* work, 28, 91.

wurm, *sm.* worm, snake, 5.

wurze, *wf.* root, plant.

wurzel, *swf.* root.

Z

- zageheit, *sf.* cowardice.
 zaher, *sm.* tear, 5, 10.
 zal, *sf.* number, 9. 1, 31. 3, 48.
 zant, zan (*gen.* zandes), *sm.* tooth, 43.
 ze (zuo), *prep.* at, in, to, as much as, (undergoes contraction with the def. art.); ze bruoder, as brother; ze rēhte, rightly, properly; ze handen haben, possess; *av.* too: ze sēre, too much.
 zebrēchen, zerbrēchen, *sv.* IV, break, break in pieces.
 zehant, *av.* at once, on the spot.
 zēhe, *wf.* toe.
 zēhen, *num.* ten, 5, 62.
 zēhente (-de), *num.* tenth, 62.
 zēhenzic (-ec), hundred, 62.
 zēhenzigeste, *num.* hundredth, 62.
 zeichen, *sn.* sign, mark, token, 23, 1.
 zeigen, *wv.* show, 33.
 zeim = ze einem(e).
 zeln, *wv.* reckon, count, 31. 3, 90.
 zēme, zēm = ze dēme, 68 note 2.
 zēmen, *sv.* IV, suit, be becoming or fitting, 82.
 zēn = ze dēn, 68 note 2.
 zēr = ze dēr, 68 note 2.
 zergān, -gēn, *sv.* VII, vanish, stop, perish.
 zerren (*pret.* zarte), *wv.* pull, tug, tear.
 zerwirken (*pp.* zerworht), *wv.* cut up, dissect.
 zesamene, *av.* together.
 zēse (-wes), *aj.* right.

- zestunt, *av.* on the spot.
 zeswēllen, *sv.* III, swell to the utmost.
 zewāre, zwār, *av.* in truth, truly.
 ziehen, *sv.* II, draw; *refl.* withdraw, 10, 23. 1, 30, 78.
 zierde, *sf.* adornment, 9. 2.
 zieren, *wv.* adorn, decorate.
 zihen, *sv.* I, accuse, 76.
 zil, *sn.* aim, object.
 zimieren, *wv.* furnish with knightly accoutrements.
 zinsen, *wv.* give as interest, give away.
 zir = ze ir.
 zirke, *wm.* garland, circle, prince's crown.
 zirkel, *sm.* prince's crown.
 zīt, *sf.* time, 19.
 zobel, *sm.* robe furred with sable.
 zorn, *sm.* anger.
 zorneclīche, *av.* angrily, violently.
 zücken (*pret.* zuhte), *wv.* pull quickly, tear.
 zuht, *sf.* bringing up, education; good manners, politeness, demeanour; chastisement, punishment; mit zūhten, becomingly, gracefully, politely.
 zūhtelōs, *aj.* ill-bred, rude, insolent.
 zunft, *sf.* propriety, dignity, good breeding.
 zunge, *wf.* tongue, 3, 7, 23. 2, 53.
 zuo, *av.* to, toward; to it; zuo zwein, into two. See ze.
 zuome = zuo dēme.
 zürnen, zurnen, *wv.* be angry.
 zwei, *num.* two, 35, 62, 63.
 zweien with sich, *wv.* fall out, quarrel; pair.
 zweinzic (-ec), *num.* twenty, 62.

zweinzigste, *num.* twentieth, 62.

zwelf, *num.* twelve, 62.

zwelfte, *num.* twelfth, 62.

zwēne, zwei, zwō (*gen.* zweier, zweiger, *dat.* zwein), two, 35, 63.

zwī, zwic (*gen.* zwīges, zwīes), *smn.* twig, bough, 35.

zwīfeln, *vv.* doubt, 9. 2.

zwischen, *prep.* between.

zwīvel, zwīfel, *sm.* doubt, uncertainty; *aj.* doubtful, 55.

zwīvellich, *aj.* doubtful, uncertain, dejected.

zwīvellop (-bes), doubtful or ambiguous praise.

PRINTED IN ENGLAND
AT THE OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

OTHER GRAMMARS

BY THE SAME AUTHOR

An Old High German Primer, with grammar, notes and glossary. Price 3s. 6*d.*

Grammar of the Gothic Language, and the Gospel of St. Mark, Selections from the other Gospels and the Second Epistle to Timothy, with notes and glossary. Price 5s. net.

Historical German Grammar, Vol. I, phonology, word-formation and accidence. Price 6s. net.

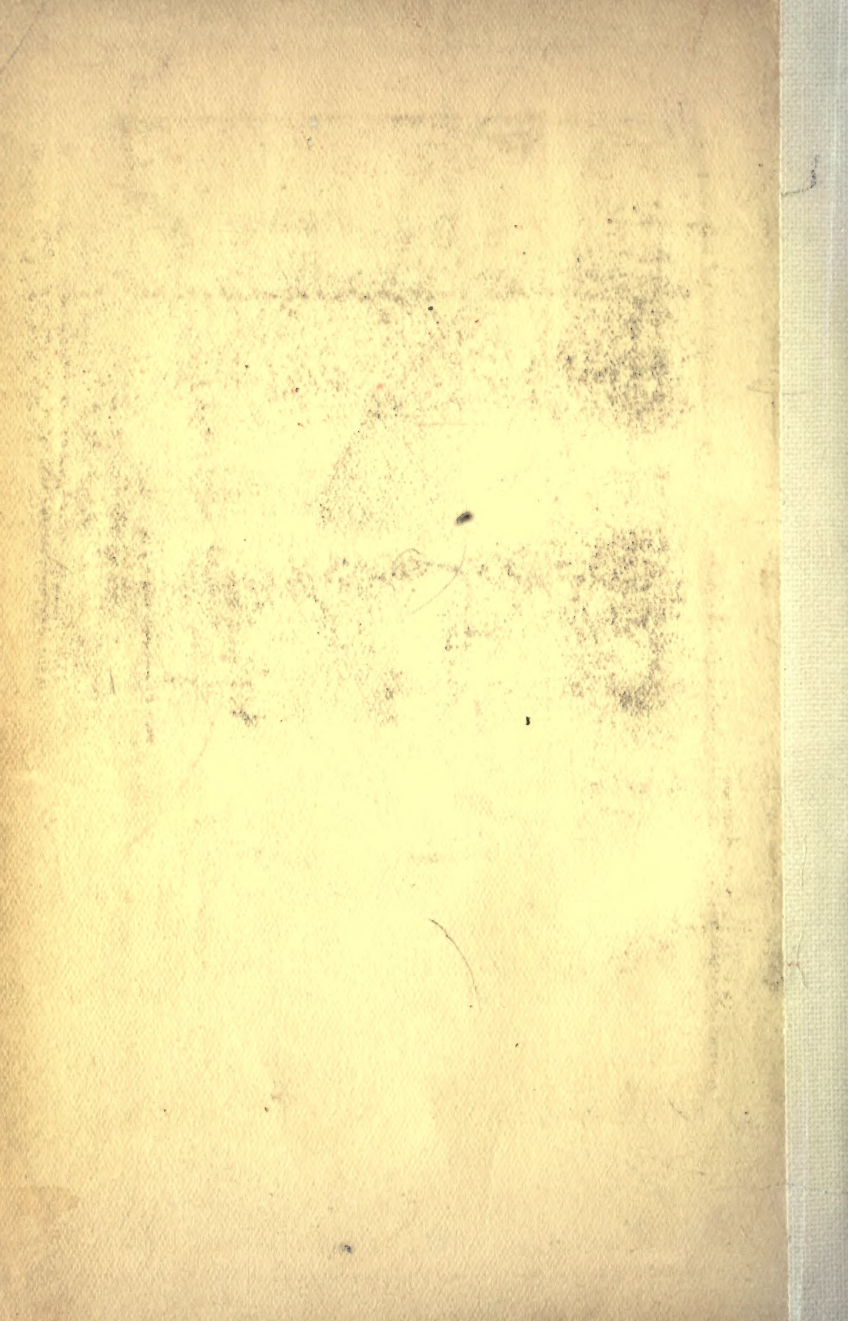
Old English Grammar. Price 6s. net.

Comparative Grammar of the Greek Language. Price 6s. net.

The English Dialect Grammar, comprising the dialects of England, of the Shetland and Orkney islands, and of those parts of Scotland, Ireland and Wales where English is habitually spoken. Price 16s. net.

A Grammar of the dialect of Windhill in the West Riding of Yorkshire, illustrated by a series of dialect specimens, phonetically rendered; with a glossarial index of the words used in the Grammar and specimens. Price 12s. 6*d.* net.





PF
4069
W9
1917
cop.2

Wright, Joseph
A Middle High German primer
3d ed., re-written and enl.

nto Library

NOV 10 1987

~~7 27 1987~~



ek loan

r day

hour for STL

**PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET**

**UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO
LIBRARY**

